

Young Adult Literature & Multimedia

8th
edition

by Sharron McElmeel, Beth Wrenn-Estes, and David V. Loertscher



Young Adult Literature and Multimedia A Quick Guide

**Sharron L. McElmeel
Beth Wrenn-Estes
David V. Loertscher**

8th Edition

**Learning Commons Press
An Imprint of Hi Willow Research & Publishing
2013**



Copyright c. 2012, 2013 Learning Commons Press
All Rights Reserved.

ISBN-13: 978-1-933170-69-5 print and digital versions

A digital collaborative, or Book2Cloud, edition is available to the owner of this book.
See details after the table of contents. The code for the Book2Cloud edition is: YA2013

Content current as of August 1, 2012.

Learning Commons Press
123 East 2nd Ave. #1106
Salt Lake City, UT 84103

Distributed by LMC Source at <http://www.lmcsource.com/>

Mail orders to:

LMC Source
PO BOX 160093
Clearfield, UT 84016

Email orders to sales@lmcsource.com

Order by phone at 800-873-3043

This pdf ebook may be treated as a printed book.
You can sell it or share it with one other person
as long as it is no longer on your computer.

Acknowledgements

Appreciation is extended to graduate students in Young Adult Materials at San Jose State University who wrote and contributed to some of the pages in this volume. Their names are included on the specific pages they helped to construct both within this book and in online contributions on the web. Thank you to Rebecca Brodegard who wrote a number of the pages and served as general editor for the entire project. Thanks also to Richie Partington, graduate of the School of Library and Information Science, for revising and adding to a number of pages. He also has served as editor to the online sections of the book.

Table of Contents

Acknowledgements	ii
Introduction	v
Section I: Understanding Young Adult Literature	1
Part A: Building A Background for Understanding Young Adult Literature	3
1. Teen Survey	3
2. Touchstones in Children’s Books.....	4
3. Building a Background for Understanding Young Adult Literature.....	6
4. Awards and Recognition	10
Part B: Building A Background for Understanding the Young Adult Reader and Consumer of Media	14
5. Teen Psychology	14
6. Collection Development and Selection.....	17
7. School and Public Library Cooperation in a Teen World.....	21
Section II: Entering the Teen World of Literacy.....	23
Part A: Teen Pop Culture.....	24
8. Graphic Novels and Manga	24
9. Comic Books – Saving the World.....	26
10. Unstoppable Anime	28
11. Cult Movies	30
12. Video Games	32
13. Teens Online	34
14. Horror Movies	36
15. Teen Movies.....	38
16. Pop Music	40
17. Downloading Music	42
18. I Want My MTV.....	44
19. Rap and Hip-Hop	46
20. Alternative Music.....	48
21. Mad About Magazines	50
22. Celebrities.....	52
23. The Kids are Alright...and So is Their Literature	54
Part B: Surrounding Teens with Literature	56
24. Promoting Reading Among Young Adults.....	56
25. Contemporary Realistic Fiction	58
26. On the Edge: YA Novels and Tough Issues.....	61
27. Quick Picks and Thin Books for Reluctant Readers.....	64
28. Books for Girls (Interesting Enough for the Discerning Reader)	66
29. Boys Do Read	68
30. Series Titles for Young Adult Readers	70
31. Don’t Judge a Book by Its Movie	72

32. Christian Romance.....	74
33. GLBTQ Literature for Teens.....	76
34. Teen Books in a Variety of Formats	78
35. Self-Help Books	80
36. Sports.....	82
37. Adventure and Nature	85
38. History and Historical Fiction	88
39. Biography	90
40. Real Science and Technology.....	93
41. Science Fiction	95
42. Fantasy	97
43. Mysteries and Horror for Teens	99
Part C: High Culture for Teens	102
44. A History of Hollywood in Brief.....	102
45. Theater/Drama.....	104
46. Dance.....	106
47. Fine Music.....	108
48. Fine Art	110
49. The Western Canon	112
50. The Emerging Canon.....	114
51. Moving On: Books for the College Bound.....	116
52. Cultural Literacy? The High School Canon	118
53. Poetry and Full-Length Works in Verse	120
54. Adult Books and the Teenage Reader	123
55. Picture Books for Young Adults	126
56. Making Connections: Young Adult Literature in the Classroom.....	129
Section III: Issues to Consider in Young Adult Literature and Multimedia... 131	
57. Multicultural Concerns.....	132
58. Censorship Issues.....	135
59. Have You Read This Book?: Booktalking to the Teenager	138
60. Programming for Young Adults.....	141
Index	144

Introduction

In the past twenty years, the world of young adult literature and multimedia has exploded. In schools of education and in library science many new courses focusing on teenagers have developed since courses in children's literature that traditionally covered teenage titles became overwhelmed with new content. Textbooks for young adult literature have become so large and so expensive that the authors decided to create a quick guide for pre-service teachers, pre-service librarians, and for anyone who would like to become acquainted with the basics of the new teen world of literature and multimedia.

For many persons, courses in printed literature have predominated the study of materials for either children or young adults. However, to ignore the world of multimedia and teens, including the Internet, is like ignoring the part of the iceberg that is underwater.

This book is organized into the following three sections: Understanding Young Adult Literature, Entering the Teen World of Literacy, and Issues to Consider in Young Adult Literature and Multimedia. Each genre treated is a two- to four-page introduction to the genre followed by valuable lists, a spotlight on an important aspect, ways to keep up with the genre, and, finally, some thought questions to stir conversation and stimulate research. Instructors or workshop developers can use the result to introduce a particular topic and then expand the topic as needed.

The current edition is supplemented by the book: *Best Teen Reads*. While the previous extensions are free, Sharron McElmeel, one of the authors of the text, has created *The Best Teen Reads for 2010*, which is available from Hi Willow Research & Publishing through www.lmcsource.com. This resource contains hundreds of recommended titles both new and old to help teachers and librarians recommend good books for teens. A new edition is expected shortly.

Other Recommended Professional Books on Teenagers and their Literature from 2005:

- Auguste, Margaret. *VOYA's Guide to Intellectual Freedom*. VOYA Press, 2012.
- Agosto, Denise E, and June Abbas, eds. *Teens, Libraries, and Social Networking*. Libraries Unlimited, 2011.
- Alexander, Linda B. and Nahyun Kwon. *Multicultural Programs for Tweens and Teens*. ALA, 2010.
- Anderson, Sheila B. *Extreme Teens Library Services to Nontraditional Teens*. Libraries Unlimited, 2005.
- Anderson, Sheila B. *Serving Young Teens and 'Tweens*. Libraries Unlimited, 2006.
- Bernier, Anthony. *VOYA's YA Spaces of Your Dreams Collection*. Voya Press, 2012
- Blass, Rosanne. *Windows on the World: International Books for Elementary and Middle Grade Readers*. Libraries Unlimited, 2011.
- Bodart, Joni. *Radical Reads 2: Working with the Newest Edgy Titles for Teens*. Scarecrow Press, 2010.

- Champlain, Connie, David V. Loertscher, and Nancy A.S. Miller. *Raise a Reader at any Age: A Librarian's and Teacher's Toolkit for Working with Parents*. Hi Willow Research & Publishing, 2005.
- Cords, Sarah Startz. *The Real Story: A Guide to Nonfiction Reading Interests*. Libraries Unlimited, 2006.
- Danner, Brandy. *A Voya Guide to Apocalyptic, Post-Apocalyptic, and Dystopia Books and Media*. Voya Press, 2012.
- Donelson, Kenneth L. and Alleen Pace Nilsen. *Literature for Today's Young Adults*. 7th edition. Pearson Education Inc., 2005.
- Farmer, Lesley S.J. *Digital Inclusion, Teens, and Your Library: Exploring the Issues and Acting on Them*. Libraries Unlimited, 2005.
- Ferrelly, Michael Garrett. *Make Room for Teens! Reflections on Developing Teen Spaces in Libraries*. Libraries Unlimited, 2011.
- Flowers, Sarah. *Young Adults Deserve the Best YALSA's Competencies in Action*. ALA, 2011.
- Frolund, Tina, Compiler. *The Official YALSA Awards Guidebook*. YALSA/ALA, 2008.
- Gross, Melissa, Annette Y. Goldsmith, and Debi Carruth. *HIV/AIDS in Young Adult Novels: An Annotated Bibliography*. Scarecrow Press, 2010.
- Harlan, Mary Ann, David V. Loertscher, and Sharron L. McElmeel. *Young Adult Literature and Multimedia: A Quick Guide*. Hi Willow Research & Publishing, 2005.
- Herald, Nathan. *Graphic Novels for Young Readers: A Genre Guide for Ages 4-14*. Libraries Unlimited, 2011.
- Holley, Pam Spenser, ed. *Quick and Popular Reads for Teens*. ALA, 2009.
- Hooper, Brad. *Writing Reviews for Readers Advisory*. ALA, 2010.
- *In the Words of the Winners: The Newbery and Caldecott Medals 2001-2010*. ALSC and The Horn Book, 2011.
- Irvin, Judith, June Meltzer, Nancy Dean, and Martha Jan Mickler. *Taking the Lead on Adolescent Literacy: Action Steps for Schoolwide Success: For Grades 4012*. Corwin Press, 2010.
- Keane, Nancy J. and Terence W. Cavanaugh. *The Tech-Savy Booktalker: A Guide for 21st-Century Educators*. Libraries Unlimited, 2009.
- Kunzel, Bonnie and Constance Hardesty. *The Teen-Centered Book Club: Readers into Leaders*. Libraries Unlimited, 2006.
- Latrobe, Kathy and Judy Drury. *Critical Approaches to Young Adult Literature*. Neil Schuman, 2009.
- Lesesne, Teri S. *Nake Reading: Uncovering What Tweens Need to Become Lifelong Readers*. Stenhouse Publishers, 2006.
- Littlejohn, Carol. *Book Clubbing! Successful Book Clubs for Young People*. Linworth, 2011.
- Loertscher, David V. and Landon D. Loertscher. *My Reading and Writing Log: Microsoft Access Edition*. Hi Willow Research & Publishing, 2005.
- Lynn, Ruth Nadelman. *Fantasy Literature for Children and Young Adults: A Comprehensive Guide*. 5th ed. Libraries Unlimited, 2005.

- Manhood, Kristine. *A Passion for Print Promoting Reading and Books to Teens*. Libraries Unlimited, 2006.
- McElmeel, Sharron L. *The Best Teen Reads 2007*. Hi Willow Research & Publishing, 2007.
- *Newbery and Caldecott Awards. 2010 Edition*. ALSC, 2011.
- Ott, Valerie A. *Teen Programs with Punch: A Month-by-Month Guide*. Libraries Unlimited, 2006.
- Plumb, Cania. *A Field Manual for Helping Teens Understand (and Maybe Even Enjoy) Classic Literature*. Voya Press, 2012.
- Rabey, Mellisa. *Historical Fiction for Teens: A Genre Guide*. Libraries Unlimited, 2011.
- Reid, Rob. *Reid's Read-Alouds: Selections for Children and Teens*. ALA, 2009.
- Schall, Lucy. *Value Packed Booktalks: Game Talks and More for Teen Readers*. Libraries Unlimited, 2011.
- Solomon, Laura. *Doing Social Media So It Matters: A Librarian's Guide*. ALA, 2011.
- Sullivan, Michael. *Connecting Boys with Books 2: Closing the Reading Gap*. ALA, 2009.
- Thomas, Rebecca L. *Popular Series Fiction for Middle School and Teen Readers: A Reading and Selection Guide*. Libraries Unlimited, 2005.

For the eighth edition, the authors have updated references, added and subtracted titles, but kept the bulk of the work the same as the first edition. Comments are invited by the authors and can be addressed to David Loertscher at reader.david@gmail.com

Introduction to the Digital Collaborative Edition

The digital collaborative edition of this book is designed to turn each genre chapter of the book into a conversation between the authors and readers. If you have purchased the printed copy of this edition, you can gain access to the collaborative edition as detailed below.

The digital edition can also be purchased without owning the printed edition on the LMCSOURCE website.

The collaborative version allows readers to add links, documents, news, projects, additional titles, additional information, booktalks, and multimedia, and have a discussion associated with each of the topics in the book. At the top of each topical page is the text of the original book and under this is the space for all the additions.

We anticipate the following uses:

For individual purchasers:

When you purchased the book from LMCSOURCE and included your email address in the order, your email address will be authorized automatically for the digital version. If for some reason this does not happen, email lmcsourceverify@gmail.com including the passcode on the printed version's verso of the title page. They will give you the permission you need. You will always have to access the book through your email; not directly. We recommend using a Gmail address since the book will end up in Google Sites and be under the "more" tab of your Gmail.

If you have not automatically received an invitation to the book after purchase, send an email to reader.david@gmail.com and request access to the book and give the passcode of YA2013. You will then receive by return email an invitation to join the public collaborative version. Other individual purchasers will have access to that version, so you will find that others are sharing their ideas along with those you would like to share.

For professional development groups or formal classes:

Ask each of your group to purchase a copy of the book or the digital version from <http://lmcsource.com>. You may wish to purchase a group discount. Speak to the sales representative about this. When that transaction is complete, write an email to reader.david@gmail.com and a separate version will be created for your group. As "owner" of this edition, you will be able to allow your group into the edition and only your group will be able to comment, add links, etc. If you would like the book again with another group, talk with us for other ideas. This book is revised annually by Aug. 1, so we can plan together how the new edition could be used keeping all or parts of the previous group's work.

Section I

Understanding Young Adult Literature

Section 1 provides an introduction to the world of literature for teenagers. It begins with a review of children’s titles that should have been read before the 6th grade and then introduces the young adult novel and the teenager for whom this literature is written. Specific topics are addressed in two parts:

Part A: Building A Background for Understanding Young Adult Literature.....	3
Part B: Building a Background for Understanding the Young Adult Reader and Consumer of Media	14

1. Teen Survey

The only way to really know what is going on in teen literature and media is to connect with teens themselves. But you need to talk and communicate with them about their world of media. Designing a questionnaire might help with a verbal survey or might help to collect broader data.

Why do a survey when you work with teens every day? The simple answer is that most of us interact with only a subset of teens in our daily activities. For example, a public librarian might interact well with teens that frequent the public library, but what about all those who don't come? A school librarian might experience the same customers every week but does not know the quiet patrons, those who never come in, or those who gave up coming long ago. Teachers might know their students in general, but the specifics of individual students might escape them.

A bank of questions might help in creating a brief questionnaire for the specific purpose you have in mind. What follows is a sample survey that you might wish to use or adapt. Try the survey on a few teens to see if you are getting useful information before giving the questionnaire to a larger group.

Think of using various Web 2.0 tools to collect the information such as Survey Monkey www.surveymonkey.com/ or Google Forms www.google.com/google-d-s/forms/. The latter can be done by a group simultaneously for instant results.

(Sample form follows)

Student Name: _____ Classroom: _____

Survey for Readers

Circle your response

7. (cont.) Of the books you have read recently, how many could be classified as:
- | | | | |
|---------------------------|------|---------|------------|
| a. Mystery | None | Several | Almost All |
| b. Romance | None | Several | Almost All |
| c. Science and Technology | None | Several | Almost All |
| d. Sports | None | Several | Almost All |
| e. Self-help or religious | None | Several | Almost All |
| f. Adult books | None | Several | Almost All |
| g. Narrative non-fiction | None | Several | Almost All |
| h. History | None | Several | Almost All |
| i. Other Informational | None | Several | Almost All |
- Topic: _____
8. What libraries do you use to find books to read?
- | | | | |
|----------------------|-------|-----------|---------|
| a. Classroom Library | Never | Sometimes | Usually |
| b. School Library | Never | Sometimes | Usually |
| c. Public Library | Never | Sometimes | Usually |
| d. College Library | Never | Sometimes | Usually |
| e. Personal (home) | Never | Sometimes | Usually |
- Library
9. Would you enjoy participating in online book/movie/Internet discussions?
- | | |
|-----|----|
| Yes | No |
|-----|----|
10. Additional comments about your reading.

2. Touchstones in Children's Books

John Newbery (1713–1767) is often acknowledged as one of the first publishers of books for children – *A Little Pretty Pocket Book* heralded as the first children's book. Prior to that, children were content to take adult books for their own: there were the tales of Gulliver and the Lilliputians, Robinson Crusoe, and other adventurous tales. John Newbery published books intended solely for children, and two hundred years later there has never been more or better children's literature than in the 21st century. Grandparents of today's generation were introduced to books of Virginia Lee Burton, Ezra Jack Keats, Dr. Seuss, and Maurice Sendak. These giants of children's literature emerged with touchstone titles that set the pace for today's books. Of course, before these giants there were editions of Mother Goose, fairy tales, myths and legends, and a few books we now call classics, such as *Treasure Island*, *Peter Pan*, and *Tom Sawyer*. The early 1960s saw the beginning of the golden age of picture books, the gorgeous illustrated books, the toy books, and the televised or full-length movies of children's books.

Now we are entering a period where picture books bring both a chance to reminisce about favorite books from childhood, a chance to think of favorite authors and titles, of themes, and of what makes them appealing even today, as well as an era of stimulating picture books written for an older audience. A resurgence of children's books, and an interest from readers of all ages, has been launched by highly successful movies made from extremely popular novels: *Holes* (Louis Sachar), *Because of Winn Dixie* (Kate DiCamillo), and *Harry Potter*, Books 1-7 (J.K. Rowling).

Our "Can't Resist List"

Picture Books

- *The Cat in the Hat* by Dr. Seuss
- *The Snowy Day* by Ezra Jack Keats
- *Where the Wild Things Are* by Maurice Sendak
- *The Very Hungry Caterpillar* by Eric Carle
- *The Polar Express* by Chris VanAllsburg
- *The Lion and the Mouse* by Jerry Pinkney
- *Knuffle Bunny* by Mo Willems
- *Goodnight Moon* by Margaret Wise Brown
- *Frog and Toad* (series) by Arnold Lobel

Chapter Books

- *Henry and Mudge* by Cynthia Rylant
- *Ramona* by Beverly Cleary
- *Charlie and the Chocolate Factory* by Roald Dahl
- *Charlotte's Web* by E.B. White
- *Sadako and the Thousand Paper Cranes* by Eleanor Coerr and Ronald Himler
- *The Cay* by Theodore Taylor
- At least one childhood series, such as *Nancy Drew*, *The Hardy Boys*, *The Boxcar Children*, or *The Babysitter's Club*
- *The Black Cauldron* by Lloyd Alexander
- *Roll of Thunder, Hear My Cry* by Mildred Taylor
- *Where the Red Fern Grows* by Wilson Rawls
- Any of the seven titles in the *Harry Potter* series by J.K. Rowling

- *The Giver* by Lois Lowry
- *Walk Two Moons* by Sharon Creech

Classics

- *Mary Poppins* by P.L. Travers
- *Wizard of Oz* by L. Frank Baum
- *The Secret Garden* by Frances Hodgson Burnett
- *Anne of Green Gables* by Lucy Maud Montgomery
- *Little Women* and *Little Men* by Louisa May Alcott
- *Winnie the Pooh* by A. A. Milne
- *Alice in Wonderland* by Lewis Carroll

⋮

Keeping Up

- The CIG to Publishing Children's Books (link on Harold Underdown's web site) www.underdown.org/more-resources.htm
- Association for Library Services to Children at www.ala.org/alsc
- Cooperative Children's Book Center (CCBC) at www.education.wisc.edu/ccbc/

□

Thought Questions

- 1) What's your own list of books that are too good to miss?
- 2) How do you know that the current teen crowd would appreciate your list?

Our List of Favorite Children's Authors Too Good to Miss

- | | | | |
|--|--|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Adler, David | <input type="checkbox"/> Danziger, Paula | <input type="checkbox"/> Janeczko, Paul | <input type="checkbox"/> Sachs, Marilyn |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Alexander, Lloyd | <input type="checkbox"/> dePaola, Tomie | <input type="checkbox"/> Johnson, D.B. | <input type="checkbox"/> San Souci, Robert |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Alexander, Sue | <input type="checkbox"/> Diaz, David | <input type="checkbox"/> Keats, Ezra Jack | <input type="checkbox"/> Say, Allen |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Alike | <input type="checkbox"/> DiCamillo, Kate | <input type="checkbox"/> Kellogg, Steven | <input type="checkbox"/> Sayre, April Pulley |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Asch, Frank | <input type="checkbox"/> Dillon, Diane | <input type="checkbox"/> Kimmel, Eric A. | <input type="checkbox"/> Scieszka, Jon |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Avi | <input type="checkbox"/> Dillon, Leo | <input type="checkbox"/> Kjelgaard, J. | <input type="checkbox"/> Sendak, Maurice |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Aylesworth, Jim | <input type="checkbox"/> Duncan, Lois | <input type="checkbox"/> Konigsburg, E.L. | <input type="checkbox"/> Seuss, Dr. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Base, Graeme | <input type="checkbox"/> Estes, Eleanor | <input type="checkbox"/> Kurtz, Jane | <input type="checkbox"/> Shannon, David |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Blume, Judy | <input type="checkbox"/> Fisher, Aileen | <input type="checkbox"/> Lawlor, Laurie | <input type="checkbox"/> Sierra, Judy |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Bond, Michael | <input type="checkbox"/> Fitzgerald, J. D. | <input type="checkbox"/> Lawson, Robert | <input type="checkbox"/> Silverstein, Shel |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Brett, Jan | <input type="checkbox"/> Fitzhugh, Louise | <input type="checkbox"/> L'Engle, Mad. | <input type="checkbox"/> Simon, Seymour |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Brown, Marc | <input type="checkbox"/> Fleischman, Paul | <input type="checkbox"/> Lewis, C. S. | <input type="checkbox"/> Sis, Peter |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Brown, Marcia | <input type="checkbox"/> Fleischman, Sid | <input type="checkbox"/> Lindgren, Asrid | <input type="checkbox"/> Skurzynski, Gloria |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Bunting, Eve | <input type="checkbox"/> Fox, Mem | <input type="checkbox"/> Lobel, Anita | <input type="checkbox"/> Small, David |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Burton, Vir. Lee | <input type="checkbox"/> Fox, Paula | <input type="checkbox"/> Lobel, Arnold | <input type="checkbox"/> Smith, Cynthia |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Butler, Dori H. | <input type="checkbox"/> Freedman, Russ. | <input type="checkbox"/> Lowry, Lois | <input type="checkbox"/> Sneve, Virginia |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Byars, Betsy | <input type="checkbox"/> Fritz, Jean | <input type="checkbox"/> MacLachlan, Patricia | <input type="checkbox"/> Driving Hawk |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Carle, Eric | <input type="checkbox"/> Gag, Wanda | <input type="checkbox"/> Marshall, James | <input type="checkbox"/> Soentpiet, Chris |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Carlson, Nancy | <input type="checkbox"/> Galdone, Paul | <input type="checkbox"/> Martin, Bill Jr. | <input type="checkbox"/> Spier, Peter |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Carroll, Lewis | <input type="checkbox"/> George, Jean | <input type="checkbox"/> Martin, Jacqueline | <input type="checkbox"/> Spinelli, Jerry |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Casanova, Mary | <input type="checkbox"/> Craighead | <input type="checkbox"/> Briggs | <input type="checkbox"/> Stanley, Diane |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Christopher, Matt | <input type="checkbox"/> Giff, Pat. Reilly | <input type="checkbox"/> Mayer, Mercer | <input type="checkbox"/> Steptoe, John |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Ciardi, John | <input type="checkbox"/> Goble, Paul | <input type="checkbox"/> McCloskey, Rob | <input type="checkbox"/> Stevens, Janet |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cleary, Beverly | <input type="checkbox"/> Gorman, Carol | <input type="checkbox"/> McKissack, Patricia | <input type="checkbox"/> Stevenson, James |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cole, Joanna | <input type="checkbox"/> Hahn, Mary D. | <input type="checkbox"/> McPhail, David | <input type="checkbox"/> Stine, R. L. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Collier, Chris. | <input type="checkbox"/> Haley, Gail | <input type="checkbox"/> Milne, A. A. | <input type="checkbox"/> Taback, Simms |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Collier, James | <input type="checkbox"/> Hamilton, Vir. | <input type="checkbox"/> Mora, Pat | <input type="checkbox"/> Taylor, Mildred |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Lincoln | <input type="checkbox"/> Henkes, Kevin | <input type="checkbox"/> Most, Bernard | <input type="checkbox"/> Taylor, Theodore |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cooney, Barbara | <input type="checkbox"/> Henry, Marguerite | <input type="checkbox"/> Nelson, Kadir | <input type="checkbox"/> Uchida, Yoshiko |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coville, Bruce | <input type="checkbox"/> Hobbs, Will | <input type="checkbox"/> O'Dell, Scott | <input type="checkbox"/> Van Allsburg, Chris |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Creech, Sharon | <input type="checkbox"/> Hopkins, Lee | <input type="checkbox"/> Oxenbury, Helen | <input type="checkbox"/> Viorst, Judith |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Crews, Donald | <input type="checkbox"/> Bennett | <input type="checkbox"/> Park, Linda Sue | <input type="checkbox"/> Voigt, Cynhtia |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cummings, Pat | <input type="checkbox"/> Hughes, Langston | <input type="checkbox"/> Paterson, Katherine | <input type="checkbox"/> Waber, Bernard |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Curtis, C. P. | <input type="checkbox"/> Hyman, Trina | <input type="checkbox"/> Paulsen, Gary | <input type="checkbox"/> Watson, Wendy |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cushman, Karen | <input type="checkbox"/> Schart | <input type="checkbox"/> Peck, Richard | <input type="checkbox"/> White, E. B. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Dahl, Roald | | <input type="checkbox"/> Peet, Bill | <input type="checkbox"/> Wiesner, David |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Pinkney, Brian | <input type="checkbox"/> Wilder, Laura |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Pinkney, Jerry | <input type="checkbox"/> Ingalls |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Polacco, Patricia | <input type="checkbox"/> Wiles, Deborah |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Potter, Beatrix | <input type="checkbox"/> Willard, Nancy |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Prelutsky, Jack | <input type="checkbox"/> Willems, Mo |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Ransome, James | <input type="checkbox"/> Williams, Vera |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Rey, H. A. | <input type="checkbox"/> Winthrop, Elizabeth |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Rey, Margret | <input type="checkbox"/> Wood, Audrey |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Ringgold, Faith | <input type="checkbox"/> Wood, Don |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Rohmann, Eric | <input type="checkbox"/> Wright, Betty Ren |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Ross, Tony | <input type="checkbox"/> Yates, Elizabeth |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Rubel, Nicole | <input type="checkbox"/> Ylvisaker, Anne |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Ryan, Pam Muñoz | <input type="checkbox"/> Yolen, Jane |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Rylant, Cynthia | <input type="checkbox"/> Young, Ed |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> Sachar, Louis | <input type="checkbox"/> Zemach, Margot |

∴

Children's Lit Quizzes

What do you know about children's literature?

- Quiz-Zone: Childrens Book Quiz
<http://tinyurl.com/cfjmdwg>
- Braingle: 'Characters from Children's Literature' Trivia Quiz: <http://tinyurl.com/bn78yhu>
- A Daily Quiz – scroll down toward the bottom of this page www.readingrockets.org/books/fun/
Correct answers earn you a chance for a \$20 gift certificate.

Activities

1. Invite young adults to take the quizzes with you and see how each of you do.
2. Create your own children's literature quiz.
3. Later you may wish to create a similar young adult literature quiz.

3. Building a Background for Understanding Young Adult Literature

What is this phenomenon known as the teenage years? And why is it important in our culture, our literature, and our world?

For much of the world's history, there were only two distinct age groups of human beings: children and adults. In agrarian societies, every hand was needed to eek out a living. Everyone worked. Even today in many third world countries, as soon as a child passes through puberty, they are married and are considered as adults with full responsibility for sustenance and adult contributions to the community.

When the Industrial Revolution emerged in the nineteenth century, children and teenagers were employed as soon as they could physically operate a machine. Numerous activists began to publicize the horrors of child labor and its effect on the rising generation. Mechanization also caused many menial adult jobs to be eliminated, and it became apparent that the jobs that would survive required much more education and training. Western society adopted child labor laws and at the same time required young people to finish high school. Thus, by the end of World War II, a new species was created: the teenage animal. Suddenly there was a new class of individuals who were in school, but they also had leisure time — time for recreation and for mischief.

Historically, as books and literature became available to the masses, children read the limited children's literature available and then skipped directly to adult works. Teachers and librarians, plus these newly dubbed "teenagers" aged 12–18, were looking for things to read that related to teen life. There were a few books teenagers read, such as *A Tree Grows in Brooklyn* (1943) and the shocking *Seventeenth Summer* (1942), plus lots of other sentimental drivel. When 17-year-old S.E. Hinton published *The Outsiders* in 1967, followed by Robert Cormier's *The Chocolate War* (1974), the young adult novel was born and has proliferated ever since.

In recent years, the teen culture changed as its desire toward ultimate consumerism required more than just pocket change. Today, most teens are back in the work force doing the low-paid jobs no one else wants in order to pay for the things they want to buy. With less free time, the reading of the young adult novel has declined despite the increase in its production. At the beginning of a new millennium, advertisers have developed a new group of "clients" to whom they are targeting their advertising: the "Tween" — the group that ages 8–12, or upper elementary school youth in grades 4–6, or even as low as grades 3–5.

In this quick guide, the authors target the traditional middle school and high school age groups, realizing that the tween market is developing rapidly. But before we go any further, some definitions are in order, since we will guide the reader far from the young adult novel. Our quick guide covers a range of materials for the young adult for teachers and librarians who are serving this age group. Thus a few definitions to get us started:

1. Young adult literature (the juvenile novel or YA novel): Books written for young adults and about young adults between the ages of 12 and 18.
2. Young adult literature: That literature enjoyed by young adults, whether borrowed from children's literature, adopted from adult literature by teens, or expanded to include genres such as comics, Internet sites, or their own writings as teenagers.

3. Young adult literature: That literature which adults think teenagers should experience before they go to college, ranging from classical authors such as Shakespeare to the best of many cultures around the world.
4. Young adult literature: That developing body of interesting non-fiction both aimed at teenagers, adopted by teens from the adult world, or forced upon teens in school. There is a growing genre of literary non-fiction aimed at young adults, but also the world of Google and the databases targeted at filling their research assignments.
5. Multimedia for young adults: That part of music, dancing, movies, YouTube, and television adopted by teenagers as their own.
6. Multimedia for young adults: That part of high culture including drama, art, music, dancing, television, and the Internet that adults think teenagers should experience.

So, as the authors approach the topic of teen literature and multimedia, we realize that we are covering a tug-of-war body of materials consisting of those being pushed into teen's experience and those they identify as their own whether we like it or not.

Characteristics of a Young Adult Novel

While the following characteristics are typical of most young adult novels, the absence of one characteristic does not necessarily keep the novel from being designated as being part of this genre. Many books are characterized by the emotional and social appeal to young adults.

- Written from the perspective of a young adult character (often the narrative is written in first person).
- Majority/main characters are approximately the age of the intended reader (or slightly older).
- Characters engaged in activities with which young readers can identify.
- Must include characters that the reader will care about.
- Ends with a sense of hope.
- Young person responsible for own destiny. Formula fiction and much of the mainstream fiction for young adults finds a method of absenting the parents from the picture so that the youthful characters can figure out and be responsible for solving their own problems.
- Fast-paced narratives reach for fast action and powerful images.
- Much of the literature deals with real-life and realistic teen experiences with gangs, sexual experiences, teen problems, conflict, relationships, rebellion, and other problems teens often encounter.

YA Novels Too Good To Miss: 1960–2009

1960s

- Knowles, John. *A Separate Peace*. (1961)
Lee, Harper. *To Kill A Mockingbird*. (1962)
L'Engle, Madeleine. *A Wrinkle in Time*. (1962)
Hinton, S.E. *The Outsiders*. (1967)
Lipsyte, Robert. *The Contender*. (1967)
Potok, Chaim. *The Chosen*. (1967)
Zindel, Paul. *The Pigman*. (1968)
Cleaver, Vera and Bill. *Where the Lilies Bloom*.
(1969)
Armstrong, William. *Souder*. (1969)

1970s

- Plath, Sylvia. *The Bell Jar*. (1971)
Gaines, Ernest. *The Autobiography of Miss Jane Pittman*. (1971)
Anonymous. *Go Ask Alice*. (1971) - Actual author
is Beatrice Sparks
Mathis, Sharon Bell. *A Teacup Full of Roses*. (1972)
Potok, Chaim. *My Name is Asher Lev*. (1972)
White, Robb. *Deathwatch*. (1972)
Kerr, M.E. *Dinky Hocker Shoots Smack*. (1972)
Green, Betty. *Summer of My German Soldier*.
(1973)
Childress, Alice. *A Hero Ain't Nothin' But A
Sandwich*. (1973)
Peck, Robert Newton. *A Day No Pigs Would Die*.
(1973)
Sleator, William. *House of Stairs*. (1974)
Cormier, Robert. *The Chocolate War*. (1974)
Blume, Judy. *Forever*. (1975)
Yep, Lawrence. *Dragonwings*. (1975)
Guest, Judith. *Ordinary People*. (1976)
Peck, Richard. *Are You in the House Alone?* (1976)
McCaffrey, Anne. *Dragonwing*. (1976)
Cormier, Robert. *I Am the Cheese*. (1977)
Duncan, Lois. *Killing Mr. Griffin*. (1978)
McKinley, Robin. *Beauty: Retelling...*(1978)

1980s

- Adams, Douglas. *A Hitchhiker's Guide to the
Galaxy*. (1980)
Walker, Alice. *The Color Purple*. (1982)
Cisneros, Sandra. *The House on Mango Street*.
(1983)
Voigt, Cynthia. *Dacey's Song*. (1983)
Paulsen, Gary. *Dogsong*. (1985)
Card, Orson Scott. *Ender's Game*. (1985)
Paulsen, Gary. *Hatchet*. (1987)
Myers, Walter Dean. *Fallen Angels*. (1988)

1990s

- Avi. *The True Confessions of Charlotte Doyle*. (1990)
Lowry, Lois. *The Giver*. (1993)
Crutcher, Chris. *Ironman*. (1995)
Pullman, Philip. *The Golden Compass*. (1996)
Thomas, Rob. *Rats Saw God*. (1996)
Hesse, Karen. *Out of the Dust*. (1997)
Levine, Gale Carson. *Ella Enchanted*. (1997)
Soto, Gary. *Buried Onions*. (1997)
Sachar, Louis. *Holes*. (1998)
Hickham, Homer. *Rocket Boys/October Sky*. (1999)
Rowling, J.K. *Harry Potter and the Sorcerer's Stone*.
(1998)
Myers, Walter Dean. *Monster*. (1999)
Curtis, Christopher Paul. *The Watson's Go to
Birmingham*. (1995)
Curtis, Christopher Paul. *Bud, Not Buddy*. (1999)

2000s

- Anderson, Laurie Halse. *Speak*. (2000)
DiCamillo, Kate. *Because of Winn-Dixie*. (2000)
Philbrick, Rodman. *The Last Book in the
Universe*. (2000)
Peck, Richard. *A Year Down Yonder*. (2001)
Crutcher, Chris. *Whale Talk*. (2001)
Howe, James. *The Misfits*. (2001)
Brashares, Ann. *Sisterhood of the Traveling Pants*.
(2001)
Taylor, Mildred. *The Land*. (2001)
Park, Linda Sue. *A Single Shard*. (2001)
Giff, Patricia Reilly. *Pictures of Hollis Woods*
(2002)
Avi. *Crispin: The Cross of Lead*. (2003)
Johnson, Angela. *The First Part Last*. (2003)
Moriarty, Jaclyn. *The Year of Secret Assignments*.
(2004)
Paolini, Christopher. *Eragon*. (2004)
Farmer, Nancy. *House of the Scorpion*. (2004)
Riordan, Rick. *The Lightning Thief*. (2005)
Sonnenblick, Jordan. *Notes from the Midnight
Driver*. (2006)
Schmidt, Gary D. *The Wednesday Wars* (2007)
Collins, Suzanne. *The Hunger Games*. (2008)
Applet, Kathi and David Small. *The Underneath*.
(2008)
Frost, Helen. *Crossing Stones*. (2009)
Korman, Gordon. *Pop*. (2009)
McCormick, Patricia. *Purple Heart*. (2009)
Smith, Sherri L. *Flygirl*. (2009)

2010s

- Bray, Libba *Going Bovine*. (2010)
Murray, Liz. *Breaking Night*. (2010)
Donoghue, Emma. *Room*. (2010)

Significant Authors

Several authors have emerged in the young adult field. Among these authors are the winners of the Margaret A. Edwards Award. The Edwards Award honors authors who have contributed significantly to the body of young adult literature. Consult the Awards list for specific titles cited. The author list includes S.E. Hinton who was the first to be given this award.

Winners of the Margaret A. Edwards Award

- Susan Cooper (2012)
- Sir Terry Pratchett (2011)
- Jim Murphy (2010)
- Laurie Halse Anderson (2009)
- Orson Scott Card (2008)
- Lois Lowry (2007)
- Jacqueline Woodson (2006)
- Francesca Lia Block (2005)
- Ursula K. LeGuin (2004)
- Nancy Garden (2003)
- Paul Zindel (2002)
- Robert Lipsyte (2001)
- Chris Crutcher (2000)
- Anne McCaffrey (1999)
- Madeleine L'Engle (1998)
- Gary Paulsen (1997)
- Judy Blume (1996)
- Cynthia Voigt (1995)
- Walter Dean Myers (1994)
- M.E. Kerr, pseudo. (Maryjane Meaker) (1993)
- Lois Duncan (1992)
- Robert Cormier (1991)
- Richard Peck (1990)
- S.E. Hinton (1988)

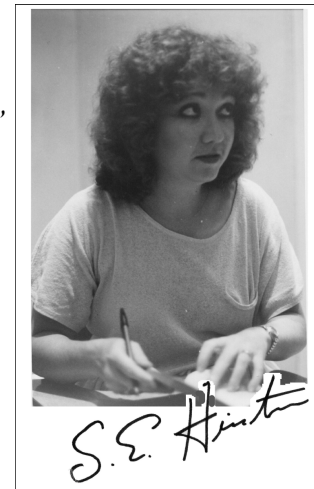
See a complete list of winning authors and books at www.ala.org/yalsa/edwardsds

Spotlight: S.E. Hinton

The first book that embraced real society was Susan Eloise (S.E.) Hinton's *The Outsiders* (Viking, 1967). Written by a female writer, and a teenager at that, this book has been heralded as the first in the new lexicon of young adult literature. At the time Susan was writing her groundbreaking novel, she flunked her high school writing class. Egged on by her younger sister who wanted a car so the two of them could have a little fun, Susan allowed a friend's mom, a literary agent, to submit her manuscript to a publisher. The rest is history. She became the first recipient of the Margaret A. Edwards award for her contribution to literature for young adult readers.

Books by S.E. Hinton

The Outsiders (Viking, 1967)
That Was Then, This Is Now (Viking, 1971)
Rumblefish (Delacorte, 1975)
Tex (Delacorte, 1979)
Taming the Star Runner (Delacorte, 1988)
Hawkes Harbor (Tor Books, 2004)



Keeping Up

- Nilsen, Alleen Pace, and James Blasingame, Kenneth L. Donelson, Don L.F. Nilsen. *Literature for Today's Young Adults*. (9th edition). Allyn & Bacon, 2012.
- YALSA media lists at:
www.ala.org/ala/mgrps/divs/yalsa/booklistsawards/bestbooksya/bbyahome.cfm
- *Voya Magazine* (online at www.voya.com)

Thought Question

Do a quick survey of some teens you know asking them about their consumption of media, including print, film, TV, computer, and radio. How much of their day do they spend with each of these media? What are the implications for you as you begin to try to understand the world of teen literature and multimedia?

4. Awards and Recognition

The Michael L. Printz Award for excellence in young adult literature was established in 2000, in honor of Michael L. Printz, a Kansas librarian. His passion for books and reading inspired this YALSA sponsored award. The award is designated to honor books marketed for 12 through 18 year olds. The John Newbery medal, first proposed by Frederic G. Melcher in 1921, was the first award to honor excellence in children's literature (with children being defined as ages 8–14). The award was first presented in 1922. In the years that followed, the United States was introduced to several other awards.

As the body of literature for young readers grew and the genre of young adult literature appeared, there seemed a need for additional awards. Some awards recognize individual titles, while others honor an author's lifetime body of work. Most books recognized by the American Library Association are selected for literary merit while the majority of state awards are chosen because of their popular appeal to readers.

Multicultural Awards

One of the oldest multicultural awards is the Coretta Scott King (CSK) award. First awarded in 1970, the CSK award is presented to an author (or illustrator) of African descent who promotes understanding of the American dream. Past winners include: *We Are the Ship: The Story of Negro League Baseball* by Kadir Nelson and *Elijah of Buxton* by Christopher Paul Curtis.

In 2010, the Coretta Scott King-Virginia Hamilton Award for Lifetime Achievement was established. The first award winner was Walter Dean Myers whose four decades of writing for young adults was honored. In 2012, the winner was Ashley Bryan. In "odd" years an educator is recognized.

The Pura Belpré award, established in 1996, recognizes a Latino/a that best represents and celebrates the Latino culture. In 2009, the award became an annual award. Past winners include Pam Muñoz Ryan for *Esperanza Rising*, Victor Martinez for *Parrot in the Oven: Mi Vida*, and Julia Alvarez for *Return to Sender*.

Award	2012 Winner
Printz	<i>Where Things Come Back</i> by John Corey Whaley
Newbery	<i>Dead End in Norvelt</i> by Jack Gantos
Robert F. Sibert Award	<i>Balloons Over Broadway: The True Story of the Puppeteer of Macy's Parade</i> by Melissa Sweet
Margaret A. Edwards	Susan Cooper
Coretta Scott King – Virginia Hamilton	Ashley Bryan (storyteller, artist, author, poet, and musician)
Coretta Scott King	<i>Heart and Soul: The Story of America and African Americans</i> by Kadir Nelson (author award)
Schneider Family Book Award	<i>Close to Famous</i> by Joan Bauer <i>Wonderstruck</i> by Brian Selznick Teen – <i>The Running Dream</i> by Wendelin Van Draanen
Pura Belpré	<i>Under the Mesquite</i> by Guadalupe Garcia McCall

Informational Books

For many years informational books were overlooked when it came award time. The majority of Newbery award winners have been fiction, although four biographies, two books of poetry (including Paul Fleischman's *Joyful Noise: Poems for Two Voices* in 1989), and one book of history have garnered the award. In 2001 ALA members responded to the growing oversight by establishing the Robert F. Sibert Award to celebrate the best informational book published in the preceding year. Past winners have included *An American Plague: The True and Terrifying Story of the Yellow Fever Epidemic of 1795* by Jim Murphy (2004) and *Almost Astronauts: 15 Women Who Dared to Dream* by Tanya Lee Stone (2010).

YALSA Awards

The Young Adult Library Services division of ALA (YALSA) has four awards that specifically recognize contributions to young adult literature.

- The Margaret A. Edwards lifetime achievement award
- Michael A. Printz award recognizes an outstanding work of literature published during the preceding year.
- The Alex Award list, recognizes books published for adults that have crossover appeal for teenagers.
- The William C. Morris YA Debut Award recognizes a debut book by a first-time author.

In 2008, ALSC and YALSA named the first Odyssey winner for excellence in audio books for children/young adults.

Other Awards

ALA, and its various divisions, is not the only organization awarding outstanding young adult books. The Assembly on Literature for Adolescents (ALAN) honors an individual who has made an outstanding contribution to the field of young adult literature.

- 2012 Boston Globe-Horn Book Awards:
No Crystal Stair: A Documentary Novel of the Life and Work of Lewis Michaux, Harlem Bookseller by Vaunda Micheaux Nelson and Chuck Close; *Face Book* by Chuck Close
- National Book Awards—Young People's Literature, 2011: *Out e³ Back Again* by Thanhha Lai (announced in November)
- Society of Children's Book Writers & Illustrators presents the Golden Kite Award, an award given by peers for outstanding work: *Between Shades of Gray* by Ruta Sepetys and *Amelia Lost: The Life and Disappearance of Amerlia Earhart* by Candace Fleming.

Where to Find Award Information

ALAN: www.alan-ya.org

Boston Globe-Horn Book:
www.hbook.com

Golden Kite Award: www.scbwi.org/ > Awards & Grants > Golden-Kite-Award

ALSC Book Awards:
www.ala.org/ala/mgrps/divs/alsc/award_sgrants/bookmedia/index.cfm

National Book Awards:
www.nationalbook.org

State and Regional Choice Awards

There are a number of state and regional awards. The significance of the state and regional awards is that they are often “choice” awards. Choice awards are selected through a combination of teens and adults. Nominations come from teens, and adult professionals (often librarians and English teachers) narrow the list. Teens read and vote for the winner from the narrowed list.

Selected State/Regional Choice Awards—Gateway (links) to websites available at www.mcbookwords.com/authorlinks/bookawards.html

Selected State Choice Awards

Grades 6–8 Focus

Delaware: Blue Hen Award (chapter book division)
Florida: Sunshine State Young Reader’s Award
Illinois: Rebecca Caudill Young Readers’ Book Award
Louisiana: Louisiana Young Reader’s Choice Award (grades 6-8 division)
Maine: Student Book Award
Minnesota: Maud Hart Lovelace Book Award
Missouri: Mark Twain Award (grades 4-8)
Vermont: Dorothy Canfield Fisher Children’s Book Award
West Virginia: Children’s Book Award
Wisconsin: Golden Archer Award (Middle/Junior high school)

Grades 6–8 & 9–12

Pacific Northwest Library Association’s Young Reader’s Choice Award
Arizona: Young Readers Awards
California: Young Reader Medal
Kansas: Heartland Award for Excellence in Young Adult Literature
Kentucky: Bluegrass Award
Maryland: Black-Eyed Susan Book Award
Massachusetts: Children’s Book Award
Michigan: Great Lakes’ Great Books Award
Nebraska: Golden Sower Award
Nevada: Young Reader Award



Grades 6–8 & 9–12 (continued)

New Jersey: Garden State Book Awards–Teens
New Mexico: Land of Enchantment Book Award-Young Adult
New York: Charlotte Award–Young Adult Award
Ohio: Buckeye Children’s Book Award
Pennsylvania: Young Reader’s Choice Award
Rhode Island: Teen Book Award
South Carolina: SCASL (SC Assoc. of School Librarians) Book Award
Texas: Lone Star
Virginia: Virginia State Young Readers

Grades 7–12 Focus

Colorado: Blue Spruce Young Adult Book Award
Georgia: Peach Book Award for Teen Readers
Illinois: Abraham Lincoln Illinois High School Book Award
Indiana: Eliot Rosewater (Rosie) Award
Iowa: Iowa Teen Award
Iowa: Iowa High School Book Award
Missouri: Gateway Readers Award (grades 9–12)
Ohio: Teen Buckeye Award (grades 9–12)
Oklahoma: Sequoyah Book Awards–Young Adult
South Dakota: YARP Reading List
Tennessee: Volunteer State Book Award–Young Adult
Texas: Tayshas
Utah: Beehive Awards
Washington: Evergreen Young Adult Book Award

Lists

Several professional publications publish best books lists, on an annual basis: *Horn Book*, *VOYA*, *School Library Journal*, *Booklist*, and *Kirkus Reviews*. ALSC (a division of ALA) publishes a list of “Notable Children’s Media” (including books), and YALSA publishes “Best Books for Young Adults,” “Quick Picks for Reluctant Readers,” “Popular Paperbacks,” and “Audio Books.” Since 2007, YALSA has also published a “Great Graphics Novels for Teens” list. ALA lists can be found at www.ala.org/alsc and www.ala.org/yalsa. Don’t overlook other lists, including the Bulletin of the Center for Children’s Books Blue Ribbon Awards, International Reading Association’s “Choice” lists, and lists from organizations dedicated to a specific topic, such as the National Science Teachers Association.

Websites:

- The Bulletin: Blue Ribbon Awards — bccb.lis.illinois.edu/
- Teen Reading Lists: San Jose Public Library — sjpl.org/tags/young-adult-fiction
- International Reading Association — www.reading.org
- National Science Teachers Association — www.nsta.org (search “best books list”)
- National Council for the Social Studies (Notable List) — www.socialstudies.org/resources/notable

Online Reading Recommendations:

- www.teenreads.com — Reader’s Recommendations
- www.bookdivas.com — The Leading Online Book Community for Young Adult and College Readers
- www.readingrants.org — Reading Rants! Out of the Ordinary Teen Booklists!
- www.readkiddoread.com — “advanced reads” include recommendations for ages 10 & up

Spotlight: *Chains* by Laurie Halse Anderson



In 2009, Anderson was honored with the Margaret A. Edwards Award in recognition of her powerful novels: *Catalyst*; *Fever 1795*; and *Speak*. Some feel that *Chains* is even more significant. Anderson writes of Isabel who is a slave in the home of a loyalist (during the Revolutionary War period). Isabel’s plight forces her to think about the loyalist and patriot causes and her own freedom. *Chains* won the 2009 Scott O’Dell Award for historical fiction and was a National Book Award Finalist. *Chains* examines Isabel’s fight for freedom alongside the entire nation. *Forge* (2010) continues the story as Curzon, who as part of the patriot army, fears discovery as a slave passing for free. Curzon must find out what it takes for a slave to forge his own path during the American Revolution. You can follow her adventures on Twitter, twitter.com/halseanderson and at madwomanintheforest.com

An Award Author to Watch

In 2006, John Green made his way onto Young Adult lists when he was awarded the Michael A. Printz Award for his first novel, *Looking for Alaska*. That triumph was quickly followed with other acclaimed titles, *An Abundance of Katherines* (2006), *Paper Towns* (2008) and an innovative novel written with David Levithan, *Will Grayson, Will Grayson* (2010). His most recent title is *The Fault in Our Stars*. Two teenagers from Indianapolis, Hazel and Augustus, meet at a Cancer Kid Support Group. Hailed as a best book, some have described *The Fault in Our Stars* as a sure “instant classic.” Green’s official website is at johngreenbooks.com

Thought Questions

1. How important are awards chosen by the readers in comparison to those selected for their literary value?
2. Should all awards take into consideration the book’s potential for popularity among its audience? Explain.
3. Award books from past decades are, by today’s standards, found to be flawed in terms of stereotypes of minority cultures/genders. What implication does that have for use in the classroom/library?

5. Teen Psychology

Adults who determine to work with the teenagers of today are brave or crazy, depending on your point of view. It is certain that those who dedicate their lives to this age group have to love their subjects and spend a career in fascinated puzzlement. We have all been teenagers at one time or another, experiencing those wonderful, terrible, and unexpected changes, but we cannot assume that our own experience is representative of those whom we aim to serve. A good dose of teenage psychology, research, and common sense will prepare us and keep us on our toes of understanding teens. It is certain that those who dislike or fear teens should find another vocation.

So many young adults come from dysfunctional homes, they lack English skills, or they are from such a wide variety of cultural backgrounds that teachers and librarians have to stretch understanding constantly to communicate effectively with these budding adults. To communicate your respect and your certainty of the teen's worth is to gain their trust and respect while keeping a measure of professional distance. Today's teens need advocates—adults who are willing to step in when society, the school, the law, or other community institutions are abusing their “power” over teenagers.

The Four Spheres of Development

As a teen teacher/librarian/advocate, think, read, and plan in advance for how to deal with four significant aspects of development during the teen years. Here is our list of considerations. Add and revise as you build understanding and discuss these critical characteristics.

Physical Development

- ❑ There are certain things we can't change: skin color, height, zits, handsome or ugly, early or late development...it's all in the genes. Accept it and move on.
- ❑ Puberty comes to all at various times during the teen years. There is nothing you can do to control the timing of this event. Correct information will minimize the surprises.
- ❑ Teenage diseases are both genetic and environmental and can be the consequence of our behavior or out of our control.
- ❑ Healthy eating, exercise, sleep, and cleanliness will contribute or detract from our sense of wellbeing and predict what will happen to us physically in our adult life.
- ❑ Risky behaviors often have deadly consequences (sex, drugs, alcohol, and the excess of almost anything).

Spiritual Development

- ❑ Teens often question family traditions of religion, churches, or the lack thereof. Have the courage to investigate fully before making life-long decisions.
- ❑ A moral and ethical sense not only helps us get along in society, but it is the foundation of a healthy, well-rounded person.

Social Development

- ❑ Friendships are a vital part of growing up.
- ❑ Deciding the difference between a true friend and a fair weather friend is a critical skill to develop.
- ❑ Being your own self, with your own standards, should be acceptable to a true friend.
- ❑ It's often who you know as much as it is what you know.
- ❑ “Fun” need not involve self-destructive behavior.

- ❑ The world of social networking extends friendships but also introduces problems.

Emotional Development

- ❑ Everyone feels depressed at times, but if this is an all-day, everyday experience, seek help.
- ❑ Changes in our physical bodies during puberty affect our emotions as well as our bodies. Many crazy feelings are usually only temporary as we learn to cope in the adult world.

Resources for adults working with teens:

- Lerner, Richard M. and Laurence Steinberg. *Handbook of Adolescent Psychology*. 2 vols. Wiley, 2009. An authoritative and scholarly encyclopedia.
- Stickle, Fred E. *Adolescent Psychology* 8th ed. McGraw-Hill/Dushkin, 2011. This book comes out annually, so make sure you have the most recent edition. Additional resources and teaching suggestions to accompany the collected articles online at www.dushkin.com/online
- Pressley, Michael. *Child and Adolescent Development for Educators*. Guilford Press, 2006.
- Psychology Information Online: Depression in Teenagers: www.psychologyinfo.com/depression/teens.htm
- Encyclopedia of Psychology – Links to additional sites. www.psychology.org/links/Environment_Behavior_Relationships/Adolescent/
- Faber, Adele and Elaine Mazlish. *How to Talk to Teens Will Listen and Listen So Teens Will Talk*. Collins, 2005.
- Godfrey, Rhett. *The Teen Code: How to Talk to Them About Sex, Drugs, and Everything Else – Teenagers Reveal What Works Best*. Rodale Books, 2004.
- Edgette, Janet Sasson. *Stop Negotiating With Your Teen: Strategies for Parenting Your Angry, Manipulative, Moody, or Depressed Adolescent*. Perigee, 2002.
- Martinez, Katherine and Michael Sloan. *My Anxious Mind: A Teen's Guide to Managing Anxiety and Panic*. Magination Press. 2009
- Tapscott, Don. *Grown Up Digital: How the Net Generation is Changing Your World*, 2008.
- Palfrey, John. *Born Digital: Understanding the First Generation of Digital Natives*, 2008.
- *Hanging Out, Messing Around, and Geeking Out: Kids Living and Learning with New Media* (John D. and Catherine T. MacArthur Foundation Series on Digital Media and Learning), 2010.
- Jenkins, Henry. *Confronting the Challenges of Participatory Culture Media Education for the 21st Century* (John D. and Catherine T. MacArthur Foundation Reports on Digital Media and Learning), 2009.

Self-help resources for teenagers:

- *Adolescent Health Sourcebook*. Ed. Joyce Brennfleck Shannon (2006)
- Ballard, Robert L. *Pieces of Me: Who Do I Want to Be?* (2009)
- Bladow, Chad E. *Seven Years, Seven Ways: Surviving Your Teen and Preteen Years*. (2007)
- Christen, Carol and Richard N. Bolles. *What Color Is Your Parachute for Teens: Discovering Yourself, Defining Your Future*. 2nd edition. (2011)
- Cobain, Bev. *When Nothing Matters Anymore: A Survival Guide for Depressed Teens*. (2007)
- Covey, Sean. *The 6 Most Important Decisions You Will Ever Make for Teens*. (2006)
- Girlosophy series. Allen & Unwin. Various titles.
- Harrill, Suzanne E. *Empowering Teens to Build Self Esteem*. (2011) (Kindle ed.).
- Horsley, Heidi. *Grief Relief*. (2007)
- Lohmann, Raychelle Cassada. *The Anger Workbook for Teens: Activities to Help You Deal with Anger and Frustration (Instant Help)* (2009)
- McCoy, Kathy and Charles Wibbelsman. *The Teenage Body Book: A New Edition for a New Generation*. (2009)
- Medoff, Lisa. *SOS: Stressed Out Students Guide to Handling Peer Pressure*. (2009)
- Niedzviecki, Hal. *The Big Book of Pop Culture: A How-To Guide for Young Artists*. Illustrated by Marc Ngui. (2007)

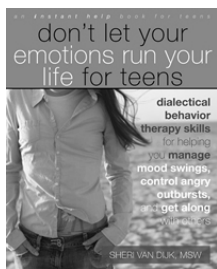
- Packer, Alex J. *The How Rude! Handbook of Friendship & Dating Manners for Teens: Surviving the Social Scene*. (2004) (Look for additional *How Rude!* books by Alex Packer.)
- Salekin, Randall and Donald R. Lynam. *Handbook of Adolescent Psychopathy*. (2010)
- Saul, 'Aunt' Laya. *You Don't Have to Learn Everything the Hard Way*. 2nd ed. (2007)
- Slade, Suzanne Buckingham. *Adopted: The Ultimate Teen Guide (It Happened to Me)*. (2007)
- Smith, Keri. *Boyology: A Teen Girl's Crash Course in All Things Boy*. (2009)
- Timothy, Sisemore. *Free from Odd: A Workbook for Teens with Obsessive-compulsive Disorder (Instant Help)*. (2010)
- Watkins, S. Craig. *The Young and the Digital: What the Migration to Social Network Sites, Games, and Anytime, Anywhere, Media Means for Our Future*. (2009)

Many current books, pamphlets, and Internet sites advise teens how to survive the teen years and live to tell about it. All materials contain the biases of their authors and are thus open to controversy. The quandary for adults is to select and help teens gain access to the information they desire. For example, some books might stress responsible drinking and others advise total abstinence from alcohol. Librarians and teachers who follow intellectual freedom guidelines try to include a wide range of opinions in the information they provide. Such policies, however, may not be popular in a very conservative community and may result in public controversy. Every teacher and librarian needs to be able to defend the array of information being provided to teens and have policies and procedures in place when questions arise. If your school or library does not have a policy for handling controversial materials, you are inviting trouble that can escalate out of control overnight.

Questions to ask about as one selects information for teens:

- What are the credentials of the author? (Education? Promoting an organizational viewpoint?)
- What is the bias of the author? (conservative to liberal)
- What messages are contained in the media aimed at teens? (magazines aimed at teen girls stressing thinness and other things)
- Are the materials something that teens would actually read, view or listen to?
- How does the material fit in with the community in which it will be used?
- How does the material support the agenda of the school or community? (making this school safe, building a drug-free zone in a neighborhood)

Spotlight on *Don't Let Your Emotions Run Your Life for Teens: Dialectical Behavior Therapy Skills for Helping You Manage Mood Swings, Control Angry Outbursts, and Get Along with Others* by Sheri Van Dijk



Teens experience so many emotional ups and down and Van Dijk's workbook is an excellent resource for parents/caregivers, teachers and librarians to use with teens to work through those feelings of anger, sadness, being frightened and feeling overwhelmed. The workshop exercises help teens learn the skills they need to gain control of their emotions and develop confidence in their abilities. Sheri Van Dijk, MSW, is an expert in the field of Dialectical Behavior Therapy.

6. Collection Development and Selection

One of the most interesting challenges both school and public librarians is the task of developing collections of information, printed materials, and multimedia that will serve the needs of the teachers and teens. School librarians concentrate more on collections that support the school's curriculum while public librarians see teen needs in a larger framework of community information needs. From the patron point of view, the task seems quite simple: Just stock what I, the teen, need when I need it, in the format I desire, in the language and reading level I prescribe, and have this at my elbow 24/7/365. Oh, and by the way, if you don't do it, Google will. (Not!)

The best way to keep current with teen trends and young adult materials is to talk to and listen to the teens you work with. However, this will not help you lead teens to materials they need, enjoy, or might be interested in if they knew about them. There are other resources that will help with this task. Our job as young adult advocates who serve teenagers requires we know not only what teens know (what is current and what is on the horizon), but also that we know about what teens need and the materials that meet those needs. Professional reviews and professional peers who work with young adults are excellent resources, but it is important to understand your community and the needs of that community when selecting materials.

Teens are an excellent source of recommendations. They are often plugged into what is available, and they know what they want. A survey to establish the different types of media that teens are consuming is often very helpful in decisions regarding your collection. Talking to the teens you work with will also help you determine the needs of teens and what is available. Become a consumer of teen media. Knowing what teens watch, listen to, and read will help open up conversations, as well as keep you up-to-date on the trends.

It is also important to know the curriculum standards and needs of the teens you serve. Each state has different standards, but there are commonalities in curriculum. Collaborating with other professionals, teachers, and librarians (both public and school) helps those involved to know what research assignments teens will be working on. As teens begin to recognize the library as an information resource, they will use the library to meet personal information needs as well. Remember, adolescence can be a confusing time in life. Teens are building personal identities and defining their individualism. Often they will have information needs built around that search for identity. Teens may not approach an adult for help in finding what they need, so it is important to keep in mind the emotional and physiological issues teens may be facing. Also pay attention to what the hot topics are in the news surrounding teenagers. What adults are saying about teenagers may spark debate and interest among teen patrons.

Professional Reviews

There are several resources for professional reviews. Publications include books, serial publications, and the Internet. Published six times a year, *VOYA* (*Voices of Youth Advocates*) magazine is an excellent starting point. *VOYA* includes articles on programs and facilities, but its primary focus is materials. The reviews, written by volunteers and teens, are assigned a popularity rating as well as a quality rating, the only journal to do so. *VOYA* also reviews websites and graphic novels. The staple for school librarians is *School Library Journal* (*SLJ*). Like *VOYA*, *SLJ* relies primarily on volunteer reviewers, which can lead to an uneven quality in reviews. *SLJ* includes reviews for all ages with a category for 5th grade and up, as well as adult books for young adults, reference materials, audio books, and other media. Reviews can

also be found in review journals with a broader focus, such as *Booklist*, *Kirkus Reviews*, and *Publisher's Weekly*. *Horn Book for Children* has reviews for older readers, despite having a focus on the younger ages, and can be an excellent resource. Another avenue to investigate when determining the worthiness of a title for addition to a collection is Amazon, which posts editorial reviews from major review journals as well as reviews from staff. (Note: These are different than customer reviews.) Book jobbers also assemble recommended lists based on collected reviews.

Review Journals

- ***Booklist***: Professional Reviewers; reviews presumed to be positive and are more annotative in nature
- ***School Library Journal***: Reviewers are primarily volunteers and has a limited number of reviews. Reviews consider quality.
- ***VOYA***: Reviews written by volunteers, including teens. Reviews are finite and consider quality.
- ***Kirkus***: Focus on public libraries. Reviewers are anonymous and paid but are mostly working professionals. The anonymity allows reviews to be sharper and more direct. Includes positive and negative reviews.
- ***Library Media Connection***: Reviewers are volunteers. Focuses on curriculum applications.
- ***Publisher's Weekly***: Focus on booksellers
- **Amazon and B&N.com**: Each pays for professional review reprint rights. Excellent resource for investigating individual titles, but not for developing a collection of multiple titles.

Associations

The Young Adult Library Services Association (YALSA) is also an excellent resource for keeping current in regards to teen materials and quality materials for libraries. YALSA is responsible for a number of lists that they compile on a yearly basis. The lists include Best Books for Young Adults, Popular Paperbacks, Quick Picks for Reluctant Readers, Selected Audio Books, and Selected DVDs and Videos. They also sponsor Teen's Top Ten, in which teens can vote online for their favorites during Teen Read Week in October. Every five years YALSA publishes a list of Outstanding Books for the College Bound. YALSA also sponsors a listserv called "YALSA Bk" that helps develop lists of titles, keeps users current in new material, and, on occasion, discusses books. Books that annotate and recommend books are among the organization's publications. Titles include *Best Books for Young Adults (3rd ed.)*, *Sizzling Summer Reading Programs for Young Adults*, and *Annotated Booklists for Every Reader*.

Another organization that focuses on young adults is The Assembly on Literature for Adolescents (ALAN). ALAN is an independent assembly of the National Council of Teachers of English (NCTE). ALAN may feature a larger diversity of members than YALSA because of its connection to the NCTE; there are more English teacher members. ALAN publishes *The Alan Review* three times per year. This journal has in-depth articles about young adult books as well as "clip and save" reviews. The articles are often focused on the teaching of literature but can be an excellent way to collaborate with English teachers to use young adult literature in their classroom. On the ALAN website, concise reviews are posted under "ALAN's Picks." Check out the other news, lists, and networking on their website.

The International Reading Association (IRA) is a worldwide network of professionals who promote literacy and lifelong reading. Each year the IRA works with different regions in the United States to develop a list of new books that encourage the reading habit. Each year the list has thirty titles selected by teens with the guidance of librarians and teachers. The

association also publishes a Teacher's Choice list, which has an advanced level that includes 6th–8th grades. Choice lists are an excellent way of keeping up with what is new.

Online Groups

The online environment has provided new avenues to keeping current with what is popular, what is quality, and, hopefully, what quality materials are popular with teens. Listservs and online communities may be difficult to keep up with but are an excellent resource for information and opinion. The YALSA and LM_NET listservs each receive nearly 100 messages a day. For more in-depth conversations, and more mail, CHILD_LIT is a well-known and frequently used discussion list. Adbooks plans discussions of one or two books a month and recommends various titles, including older as well as newer titles. While keeping up with online lists or discussion groups can be daunting, even “lurking” (monitoring the list without participation) can provide insight into available titles to help with selection. There are a number of excellent bloggers who review and discuss Young Adult materials, including the official SCBWI blog at scbwi.blogspot.com/. Set up a reader and get frequent updates from MotherReader, Bookshelves of Doom, Fuse 8, or any number of book reviewers.

Book Listservs for Librarians

- **YALSA Book:**
www.ala.org/yalsa
Select: Electronic Lists
- **LM_NET:**
<http://lmnet.wordpress.com>
- **CHILD_LIT:**
www.rci.rutgers.edu/~mjoseph/childlit/about.html
- **Booktalking:**
groups.yahoo.com/group/booktalking
- **Addbooks:**
groups.yahoo.com/group/adbooks/

Internet Sites

There are several Internet sites geared to teens that focus on books. One of these is Teen Reads (<http://www.teenreads.com>). Teen Reads provides reviews, featured authors, polls, and links to websites. There are also contests and reading group guides. Another site is Book Divas (<http://www.bookdivas.com>). You must apply to participate in the message boards, but you can still read reviews written by the divas, usually teen readers. Genrefluent (<http://genrefluent.blogspot.com/>) explores the world of genre fiction. Each entry has a brief annotation and review. There is also a teen page with comments from teens and a form for teens to submit comments. Reading Rants (<http://www.readingrants.org>) is another website with excellent annotated lists put together by Jennifer Hubert. The IPL (<http://www.ipl.org/div/teen/browse/bw0000/>) has a page of collected annotated links that lead to different public libraries with teen pages and booklists. Several publishers have pages promoting the latest books being published. Finally, sign up for Richie's Picks at (<http://www.richiespicks.com>) for ongoing and readable reviews via email, or browse reviews on his site.

Selection Policy

Providing materials for teens provides some unique challenges, particularly when dealing with younger teens. The wide range of maturity and developmental needs of teens can present difficulties. One way to effectively handle potential problems is to have a clear selection policy in place. Selection policies can guide purchasing and protect against challenges. A good selection policy will lead to a stronger collection because you will not purchase unnecessary materials, will have a well thought-out reason for the purchase of items that are grounded in

professional philosophy, and will meet the needs of your community. A good selection policy should consider the mission of your library, the objectives you wish to meet, and the mechanics of selection. The mechanics of selection should include the person responsible for selection, the criteria for selection (including the number of professional reviews to be consulted), and the formats to be selected. There are a number of sample selection policies available online including a Workbook for Selection Policy Writing produced by the American Library Association (www.ala.org/ala/issuesadvocacy/banned/challengeslibrarymaterials/essentialpreparation/workbooks/ctn). Take the time to investigate selection policies and make sure you understand the policy you are working with. Use that understanding to guide your implementation of the policy.

Selection Activity

Develop a library mission and professional objectives for a selection policy. Consider professional ethics, materials important to teens, and the information needs of teens.

Professional Titles

There are a number of major recommended lists for teens to explore. Try Wilson's *Middle and Junior High School Catalog* and the *Senior High School Catalog* that has been around for decades alongside a sampling of recommended lists as follows:

- Barr, Catherine. *Best New Media, K–12: A Guide to Movies, Subscription Web Sites, and Educational Software*. Libraries Unlimited, 2008.
- Cart, Michael. *Passions and Pleasures: Essays and Speeches about Literature and Libraries*. Scarecrow Press, 2007.
- Frolund, Tina, comp. *The Official YALSA Awards Guidebook*. YALSA/ALA, 2008.
- Gillespie, John T. and Catherine Barr. *Best Books for High School Readers*. Supplement to the 1st ed, Grades 9–12. Libraries Unlimited, 2006.
- Gillespie, John T. and Catherine Barr. *Best Books for Middle School and Junior High School Readers*. Supplement to the 1st Ed. Grades 6–9. Libraries Unlimited, 2006.
- Gillespie, John T. *The Children's and Young Adult Literature Handbook: A Research and Reference Guide*. Libraries Unlimited, 2006.
- Latrobe, Kathy and Judy Drury. *Critical Approaches to Young Adult Literature*. Neil Schuman, 2009.
- Loertscher, David V. and Laura Wimberley. *Collection Development Using the Collection Mapping technique*. Hi Willow Research & Publishing, 2009.
- Ludwig, Sarah. *Starting From Scratch: Building a Teen Library Program*. Libraries Unlimited, 2011.
- McElmeel, Sharron. *Best Teen Reads*. Learning Commons/Hi Willow Research and Publishing, 2013.
- Rabey, Melissa. *Historical Fiction for Teens: A Genre Guide*. Libraries Unlimited, 2011.
- Schall, Lucy. *Value-Packed Booktalks: Genre Talks and More for Teen Readers*. Libraries Unlimited, 2011.
- York, Sherry. *Booktalking Authentic Multicultural Literature: Fiction, History and Memoirs for Teens*. Linworth, 2008.
- Zbaracki, Matthew D. *Best Books for Boys: A Resource for Educators*. Libraries Unlimited, 2008.

7. School and Public Library Cooperation in a Teen World

In the public mind, there may be little difference between the services to teens in school and public libraries, but a closer examination will reveal major differences in the focus of the two organizations. Teachers who understand the differences and build relationships with both organizations stand the greatest chance of succeeding with their students.

The Role of School Libraries

Elementary and secondary school libraries have been around since the 1960s.. Their central focus is prescribed in their national standards, i.e. the support of the curriculum of the school. Thus they concentrate on serving students with school assignments, helping teachers construct library-friendly assignments, and providing collections that target curricular topics. Librarians are now constructing digital school libraries or virtual learning commons available 24 hours a day, seven days a week that link teens to databases, quality websites, Web 2.0 tools, and other materials directly connected to the teen's studies. School librarians may also be interested in the teaching of reading connected to the content areas of the school, so their interest is often directed toward supplying interesting and readable nonfiction and informational books at the reading levels of their clients. Some reading initiatives may also be taking place such as participating in state reading awards.

The Role of Public Libraries

Many public libraries do not have large collections of books aimed at the teen reader, a person dedicated to working with young adults, or a space in the library that teens could call their own. These libraries have children's collections and children's reading rooms, but expect the teen to graduate to the adult collections and space. In recent years, however, more interest in teens has been growing among public librarians. A space for teens is often carved out and stocked with YA fiction, graphic novels, or whatever popular fare seems to attract teens to the space. Many young adult librarians, when there are such personnel, try to build activities with teenagers that attract them to the public library. These may include book clubs, discussion groups, cultural activities, service projects, and any other activity proposed by teen advisory groups. Public librarians often inherit students from the local schools who either don't have quality school libraries or their school libraries lack the resources to support school assignments. Another crowd of teens gravitates to the public library as a social place and somewhere to go after school. The public library might be much more popular with teens because of its more diverse collection, larger young adult fiction collections, and a pleasant/safe environment.

Collaborative Relationships

Public librarians often complain that they are caught unawares about the assignments given by teachers in the local schools and teens expecting collections or services at a moment's notice. The perennial problem cannot be fully solved, but it can be minimized by regular communication among all the parties involved. The teacher who gives a call to the public library warning of a major impending research assignment or the school librarian who borrows extra materials from the public library so that there is a high fill rate during the school day is often appreciated both by the public library staff and by the teens who have a higher success rate. Links to nearby academic libraries can often help to fill requests for research on special or unusual topics. The sharing of digital resources is often one of the best cooperative activities in the quest to serve teens with quality information resources as opposed to trusting Google for everything.

Teachers, School and Public Librarians

One of the most important friendships a teacher can make is the friendship with school and public librarians. These two professionals will feed every interested teacher so many wonderful tidbits about working with their students. In return, the librarians will want to know where teachers are in the various topical units of instruction. Every librarian will act somewhat differently, but they could supply teachers with boxes of books on a topic, with interesting articles to read, with collaboration on building units of instruction, with connections to great links on the Internet, with visits to the classroom to work with students on their projects linked to information, with teaching teens information literacy, with providing booktalks to classes and small groups, with providing tours and card sign ups for the public library, with homework help, with sites/workshops, with pathfinders for information teens need on assignments, with instruction in the use of technology, and with a whole host of other services. Can you as a teacher afford to have no communication with the librarian or an enemy in the library?

Keeping Up

Five Journals explore the topic of school and public library cooperation at varying intervals:

- *School Library Journal*
- *VOYA*
- *Teacher Librarian*
- *Knowledge Quest*
- *Library Media Connection*

A Google search using “school library and public library cooperation” as key terms will yield many links to documents with procedures and standards for cooperation among the public and school libraries. Many guidelines are included for full-service cooperative ventures to special joint programs serving their common patrons.

□

Spotlight: Competencies for Professionals

In 2010, YALSA created competencies for those serving teens in libraries. These include leadership and professionalism; knowledge of client group; communication, marketing, and outreach; administration; knowledge of materials; access to information; and services. The complete document is available at:

<http://www.ala.org/yalsa/guidelines/yacompetencies2010>

Thought Questions

- 1) What cooperative activities exist between your local public and school libraries that focus on teenagers? How could these activities be improved?
- 2) What types of activities are likely to attract more teenagers to both school and public libraries?
- 3) Why can the public library usually stock more diverse and controversial YA novels than schools can? What is *in loco parentis* and how does it affect schools and school libraries?

Section II

Entering the Teen World of Literacy

The heart of this quick guide is an introduction into the mainstream of both literature and multimedia designed for the teen years. The challenge for the reader is to build a repertoire that spans the entire world of teens as a group. Here you will find friends, strangers, the tame, the outlandish, the easy, the difficult, and most anything that is both recognizable and surprising at the same time. Perhaps this is the definition of the teenage animal: never predictable, always surprising, lovable yet difficult. Enjoy.

Part A: Teen Pop Culture.....	24
Part B: Surrounding Teens with Literature	56
Part C: High Culture for Teens.....	102

8. Graphic Novels and Manga

A graphic novel defined as an ambitious comic book misses one major component. A comic book is most often the creation of a creative group who carry a storyline forward based on a formula and have an agreed upon character profile. At times these comic books are strung together in sequential episodes to tell a cohesive story of that character. The character and storyline belong to the publishing enterprise that publishes the novel. A graphic novel is usually the work of one writer who develops the character and storyline much as a conventional writer would develop a story. The critical difference between a novel/information text and a graphic novel is that in graphic novels, story and character development is shared with the reader in a graphic format similar to a storyboard format as opposed to the use of words alone.

The range of graphic novel subjects span from superhero to high school romance to biography, and informational titles. The term “graphic novel” refers more to the format than the genre. “Graphic novel” can refer to any genre of book, as long as the presentation is in a graphic format. Storytelling with pictorial storyboards creates an obvious connection to movies (in Japan these animated movies are termed Anime). Titles that have become popular include “The Road to Perdition,” “The League of Extraordinary Gentlemen,” and “The X-Men.”

Manga, which has its origins in Japan and now is present across Asia and into the United States, is a very popular sub-genre. Generally Manga has its own conventions of presentation: black and white, smaller volume size, large-eyed characters, and reads from back to front. Among the popular early titles in the Manga body of work are: “Cowboy Behop,” “Love Hina,” “Akira,” and “Sailor Moon.” Manga has become a huge market for teens. Acquaint yourself with Manga offerings at www.manga.com. Just as with other literature forms, Manga has developed beyond the escapist entertainment. In Japan and other parts of Asia, “manga” is a powerful and effective medium to educate readers in topics such as environmental conservation and food safety.

Graphic novels originating in Asia likely encompass basic mores and stereotypes that would not be accepted if the titles were published in the United States. While the titles and cover pictures may look innocent enough, some have very graphic content. The books published in Japan do, generally, have an age rating on the books—a system similar to the movie ratings in the states. Elizabeth Figa, an instructor at the University of North Texas, has assembled a superb list of links titled *Graphic Novels and Comics Websites* at courses.unt.edu/efiga/GraphicNovels/GraphicNovelsAndComicsWebsites.htm.

More and more frequently American publishers are giving readers titles with the “graphic” presentation made popular by the Manga titles. In 2007, Gene Luen Yang’s graphic novel, *American Born Chinese*, became the first graphic novel to be awarded the Michael L. Printz Award and the first graphic novel to be nominated for a National Book Award. Since 2007, the YALSA (Young Adult Library Services Association), a division of the ALA, has developed a list of “Top 10 Great Graphic Novels for Teens.” A list of nominated titles is also available. Check www.ala.org/yalsa/ggnt for those lists. The 2011 list included a book based on a “true tragedy” involving gang activity, *Yummy: The Last Days of a Southside Shorty* by G. Neri and Randy Duburke, and Native American Trickster tales from *Trickster: Native American Tales: A Graphic Collection* edited by Matt Dembicki.

Download a full-color guide, *Using Graphic Novels with Children and Teens* from Scholastic publishers at: www2.scholastic.com/content/collateral_resources/pdf/g/Scholastic_GraphixPages01.pdf

Graphic Novels—A Short List

- *Smile* by Raina Telgemeier
- *The Photographer: Into War-Torn Afghanistan with Doctors Without Borders* by Emmanuel Guibert
- *Crossing Midnight* by Mike Carey and Jim Fern
- *Cross Game V. 1.* by Mitsuru Adachi
- *Hikaru No Go, Volume I* by Yumi
- *The Zabime Sisters* by Aristophane
- *Night Fisher* by R. Kikuo Johnson
- *Pyongyang: A Journey in North Korea* by Guy Delisle (non-fiction)
- *Cat Burglar Black* by Richard Sala
- *B.B. Wolf and the Three LPs* by JD Arnold and Richard Koslowski
- *Hereville: How Mirka Got Her Sword* by Barry Deutsch
- *Teen Titans: A Kid's Game* by Geoff Johns
- *The Unwritten: Tommy Taylor and the Bogus Identity* by Mike Carey and Peter Gross
- *Cirque du Freak, v.1* by Darren Shan and Takahiro Arai
- *Tokyo Babylon* by Clamp

Popular Series—Manga and Graphic Novels

- *Emily Edison* by David Hopkins and Brock Rzy
- *Cirque du Freak, v.1* by Darren Shan and Takahiro Arai
- *Sand Chronicles* by Hinako Ashihara
- *Young Avengers* by Allen Heinberg, Jim Cheung, and others.

□

The Cooperative Children's Book Center (CCBC) has a page dedicated to Graphic Novels. Check out all the resources listed online at: www.education.wisc.edu/ccbc/books/graphicnovels.asp

Spotlight on Gene Luen Yang

In 1986, Art Spiegelman's account of his father's survival of the Holocaust, *Maus, A Survivor's Tale*, won wide acclaim, but it took two decades before graphic novels began to earn legitimacy among publishers. In 2006, Gene Luen Yang brought forth his book, *American Born Chinese*. Yang examines racial stereotypes and coming of age as a Chinese in America. Three years later, in 2009, Yang, along with Derek Kirk Kim (*Same Difference and Other Stories*), created a collection of three stories—all presented graphically in *The Eternal Smile: Three Stories*. "Duncan's Kingdom" is a somewhat traditional quest to avenge a king's murder and earn the right to marry the princess. "Grandpa Greenbax and the Eternal Smile" has a frog contemplating his one wish—but perhaps decides that being a frog may not be so bad after all. In the final story, "Urgent Request," Janet's life becomes irrevocably changed after she receives an email from a Nigerian prince, a request seeking Janet's help. Find out more about Gene Luen Yang and his books on his website at www.humblecomics.com.

Don't miss popular artist/author David Small's autobiography, *Stitches: A Memoir*. It is a compelling story of a difficult childhood and triumph in the adult world.

□

Thought Question

- 1) Read "Free Reading" by Stephen Krashen at www.schoollibraryjournal.com/article/CA6367048.html and "The 'Decline' of Reading in America, Poverty and Access to Books, and the use of Comics in Encouraging Reading" at www.sdkrashen.com/articles/decline_of_reading/all.html
 - a. Do you agree with Krashen?
 - b. Why or why not?
- 2) READING scores rise when readers have access to books. Read the School Library Journal article (Sept. 1, 2011) at bit.ly/restorelibrarians
 - Think about 5 ways you could advocate for librarians and libraries for your students/readers.
 - How important do you think access to books is?

9. Comic Books — Saving the World

Superheroes: A History¹

Superheroes burst into the American publishing world in June 1938 with Superman debuting in Action Comics #1. Inspired by two teenaged boys, writer Jerry Siegel and artist Joe Shuster, Superman went on to define the superhero genre. Not surprisingly, other super crime fighters appeared on the scene in 1939, including Batman and his sidekick Robin, Captain Marvel, and Sub-Mariner.

World War II provided the catalyst for the Golden Age of comics. America had taken on the role of the world's guardian, upholding the guiding principles of "truth, justice, and the American way." With patriotism high, Captain America and other super crime fighters battling the many injustices and evils of the world became extremely popular. This age produced many superheroes and imitations of these characters that lasted until the end of the 1940s. After the war, the demands for this genre of comic books faded and were replaced with other storylines—such as crime, westerns, and horror.

Following World War II comic books fell victim to an all-out assault from psychiatrists, parents, and law enforcement officers. Comic books were being burned in the hopes of fending off juvenile delinquency. Dr. Fredric Wertham, a prominent psychiatrist, revealed his conclusions of a two-year study involving comic books in a paper titled *Seduction of the Innocent*. He stated that comics' influence on youth was "undermining morals, glorifying violence, and were 'sexually aggressive in an abnormal way.'" This paper was published in 1954, the same year the Senate Subcommittee on the Judiciary held a hearing on comics. The self-regulating Comics Code Authority was established by the industry that same year. The publishers formed the Comics Magazine Association of America, voluntarily abiding by the code prohibiting "violence, explicit sex, gratuitous gore and the triumph of evil or antisocial behavior" from their pages. This change in attitude contributed to bringing about the Silver Age of superhero comics.

The Silver Age brought back some heroes that had faded in the '50s (e.g. Flash Gordon, Green Lantern, and the Sub-Mariner), as well as introduced new characters, such as Spider-Man and the Fantastic Four. These new characters of Marvel's fostered a growing teenage and college audience by not only dealing with the 'bad guys,' but also with universally inward dilemmas. These characters mirrored the struggles of the youth of the '60s, living in a tumultuous time with the Kennedy and King assassinations, Vietnam, and campus riots.

The two big publishing houses, Marvel and DC, were pretty much the only game in town during the 1970s as far as superheroes and adventure were concerned. Marvel's X-Men series and spin-offs were enjoying a large following. Marvel celebrated 20 years of publishing under that name and held 60% of the comics market. DC, on the other hand, accounted for 35% of comic sales but continued to attempt new ideas. In the '80s the success of the *Superman* and *Batman* movies secured DC's position in the marketplace.

The last two decades have seen familiar characters revamped only to return to their familiar selves. The future of superheroes and comics in general will no doubt evolve. The success of movies involving comic heroes, such as *Spider-Man*, has led to more superhero movies with varying degrees of success. These include *The Incredible Hulk*, *Catwoman*, *Hellboy*, *Fantastic Four*, and *Batman*. Whatever the trend, both teachers and librarians realize that the comics attract readers and contribute to literacy in general. Teens will help us select the best if we are interested enough to ask.

¹ Acknowledgement for this page given to a graduate student of San José State University.

Timeline of Superheroes

Golden Age (1938–1949)

- Superman (1938)
- Arrow (1938)
- Batman (1939)
- Sub-Mariner (1939)
- Shock Gibson (1939)
- Captain Marvel (1939)
- Daredevil (1940)
- Masked Marvel (1940)
- Wonder Woman (1941)
- Captain America (1941)

Silver Age (1956–1970)

- Flash (1956)*
- Green Lantern (1959)*
- Supergirl (1959)
- Justice League of America (1960)*
- Fantastic Four (1961)
- Spider-Man (1962)
- Mighty Thor (1962)
- Incredible Hulk (1962)
- Sub Mariner (1962)*
- X-Men (1963)
- Daredevil 2 (1964)
- Captain America (1964)*

Bronze Age (1970–Present)

- Conan the Barbarian (1970)
- Teenage Mutant Ninja Turtles (1984)
- Watchmen (1986)
- X-Force (1991) which became X-Static (2002)
- Rising Stars (2004)
- Anya Corazon (2004)
- Firebirds (2004)
- Incredibles (2004)
- Majestic (2005)

* This comic series reintroduced in the year listed.

Spotlight: The Legion of Super-Heroes



The Legion of Super-Heroes is a fictional superhero team existing in the 30th and 31st centuries in the universe of DC Comics. When the Legion of Super-Heroes first appeared it was a group of time travelers who visited Superboy (Superman when he was a teenager). This team has been around since 1958 and has been “rebooted” several times. The first team consisted of Superboy, Supergirl, The Spectre and Aquaman. Subsequent teams became larger with more super-heroes being introduced each time the team was rebooted. A list of the teams and members can be found at

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_Legion_of_Super-Heroes_members#Silver_Age_members

Keeping Up

- marvel.com
- www.dccomics.com
- www.darkhorse.com
- www.imagecomics.com
- Comic Book Resources — www.comicbookresources.com
- Book: *Understanding Comics* by Scott McCloud

Thought Questions

- 1) Will comic books ever gain respectability among the literary world?
- 2) Why do some superheroes (Superman, Batman, etc.) still thrive almost seventy years later?
- 3) In what way do the problems that current superheroes face parallel those of today’s teens?

10. Unstoppable Anime

By Sarah Couri

There's an Anime invasion just about everywhere—at movie theaters, video rental stores, and in the library. While the most enthusiastic otaku (otaku means mega-fan) might feel right at home, it can be a little overwhelming to the uninitiated. When most people use the term *Anime*, they tend to think of what it looks like: cartoon characters with crazy colored hair and big, big eyes. The definition is a little simpler than that: Anime is any animated feature that is created in Japan. It can be made for television, for theatrical release, or for direct-to-video; as long as it's animated and made in Japan, it's Anime. (If you are in Japan, *Anime* simply means any animated feature regardless of its origin.) While this is a valid definition, however, it's not entirely useful; this description includes a lot of material. It doesn't help with finding Anime for the library or with planning Anime-related programs for all your otakus.

Anime is complicated for a number of reasons. The sheer volume of material available is rather intimidating. Osamu Tezuka's *Astro Boy* is often considered a source for most modern Anime, and it was made in the 1960s¹. With over 40 years of material to choose from—and so many opinions on what's the best, and so many versions of titles—it can be a little alarming. There are titles that are syndicated TV shows, *Cowboy Bebop* for example. *Cowboy Bebop* the movie was also released theatrically in Japan and throughout the world. Is it better to start at the beginning and watch all the episodes of the show? Or can you just dive into the movie? When picking titles for library collections, these doubts can seem impossible to resolve, and familiarity with every title is out of the question.

The various audiences Anime is made for compounds the complications. Just because something's animated doesn't mean it's only for kids. There are many titles that are either inappropriate for kids, or, at the very least, are uninteresting to them thematically. Of course there are a number of titles that are specifically made for children and teenagers, but knowing which is which can be a challenge. Fortunately, it can be very easy to find thoughtful online reviews. Reading these reviews can give you a good sense of what is good and what titles are appropriate for which audience. Having so many fans can be a real advantage!

Interest in Anime has only grown over the years. However, it is difficult to pinpoint exactly when Anime became bestselling entertainment. It hit mainstream by the time *Dragonball Z* was aired on Cartoon Network; for many people, this was the first time they were exposed to Anime. Now, in addition to Cartoon Network's Toonami and Adult Swim programming incorporating many Anime titles, there's also an Anime Network.

The Anime trend does not seem to be disappearing. Many of the titles coming from Japan have blurred format lines—they are comic books and TV shows, card games, action figures, video games, and other collectible items. With such flexible marketing and income options, it's a viable market that shows no sign of slowing. Anime is not simply a consumerist craze, however; Anime artists are continually expanding the creative possibilities of animated storytelling in unique and marvelous ways, unrealized by other artists.

So how can you decide what is best to have available? As we said before, talk to teens in your library. They will help you wade through the best, and worst, of this overwhelming genre.

¹ Poitras, Gilles. "What is Anime?" *The Librarian's Guide to Anime and Manga*. 18 June 2003. www.koyagi.com/Libguide.html

Anime Online and in Print

Finding reviews, or just keeping up with the latest news, is important and challenging! Here are some places to start:

- *Anime Essentials* by Gilles Poitras (2000)
- <http://www.animenfo.com>
- <http://www.animeondvd.com>
- <http://www.animenewsnetwork.com>
- <http://www.anipike.com>
- <http://www.rightstuf.com>
- <http://www.theanimereview.com>
- <http://www.theanime.org>
- <http://www.animeresearch.com/books.html>
- "The Anime-ted Library" by Kat Kan and Kristen Fletcher Spear. Article in *VOYA* (April 2005). Available online at: pdfs.voya.com/VO/YA2/VOYA200504AnimetedLibrary.pdf
- Halsall, Jane. *Visual Media for Teens: Creating and Using a Teen-Centered Film Collection*. Libraries Unlimited, 2009.
- For teens wanting to create anime, suggest the software: Anime Studio and the guide: *Anime Studio, the Official Guide*. Course Technology, 2008.
- McCarthy, Helen. *500 Essential Anime Movies: the Essential Guide*. Collins Design, 2009.
- "Princess Mononoke: Fantasy, the Feminine and the Myth of Progress". *Anime from Akira to Howl's Moving Castle: Experiencing Contemporary Japanese Animation* (2nd ed.). New York, New York: Palgrave Macmillan. Napier, Susan J. (2005-11-24) [2001-04-21].pp. 231–248.

Caution

Be sure to contact distributors if you are going to show anime at the library. Getting permission is not usually tough, but it is important.

Touchstone Titles

- *Akira* (Geneon)
- *Dragonball Z* (Funimation)
- *Fruits Basket* (Funimation)
- *Fushigi Yugi* (Geneon)
- *Initial D* (Tokyopop)
- *Inu-Yasha* (VIZ)
- *Mobile Suit Gundam Seed* (Bandai)
- *Marmalade Boy* (Tokyopop)
- *Nausicaa: Valley of the Wind* (Buena Vista)
- *Neon Genesis Evangelion* (AD Vision)
- *Princess Mononoke* (Studio Ghibli)
- *Ranma* (VIZ)
- *Spirited Away* (Buena Vista)

Thought Questions

- 1) Hold a focus group in your classroom or library with teens interested in Anime. Why are they interested and how do they select the best from the enormous amount available?
- 2) Are there Anime groups or conventions in your local area? Have you considered attending one?

11. Cult Movies

By Rebecca Brodegard

Cult movies have been around since around the 1950s. They exploded when videotapes appeared and made movies from the theater readily accessible to people's homes. So, what are cult movies? "Cult movies are usually strange, quirky, offbeat, eccentric, oddball, or surreal, with outrageous and cartoony characters or plots, garish sets and they are often considered controversial. They elicit a fiery passion in devoted fans, and may cause cultists to enthusiastically champion these films, leading to audience participation and repetitive viewings and showings."¹ Cult movies often don't do well in the theaters, but they explode in video sales. There is usually a group of people that group together and watch a movie together, dress up like the characters, and incorporate quotes from the movie into their daily vocabulary. Any kind of movie can be a cult movie — comedies, romances, horror, Sci-Fi. Most of them are "B" movies, movies made with little budget and fall in the shadow of the A-listers.

Although there were some cult movies around the 1950s and 1960s, the biggest one, and the one that had the most impact, came in 1967 — *The Rocky Horror Picture Show*. The plot was crazy and new, with rock 'n' roll musical numbers scattered throughout. People flocked to it. Even today theaters show late-night showings of the movie with cult fans filling the seats. It is a cult classic that made the genre come alive.

Since then, more and more movies have achieved the fame and cult following that *Rocky Horror Picture Show* achieved. Today, it could be contested that the description of cult movies has changed a bit. They can be successful in the theater, gaining more and more followers, and have a huge DVD release.

One of the greatest cult classic movies of today is *Star Wars*. When *Star Wars* first appeared in 1979, it was a modest success. With the two sequels, *Empire Strikes Back* and *Return of the Jedi*, *Star Wars* was launched into a huge success. The following grew and grew. When George Lucas decided to do the "prequels," every *Star Wars* fan cheered. People lined up at theaters for months before the first showing, just to say they were the first to see the "new" *Star Wars*. People dressed in costumes, and even acted out scenes from the original three movies, to pass time in line. These are definitely signs of a cult classic.

The cult movie has been around a long time and has given us a rich history of movies to watch, follow, and parody. As long as fans create a loyal following to any movie, cult movies are here to stay.

¹ www.rockyhorror.it/webring/cultring.html

Some of the Major Cult Classics

- *The Rocky Horror Picture Show*
- *Ferris Bueller's Day Off*
- *Star Wars* (and all sequels and prequels)
- *The Texas Chainsaw Massacre*
- *Napoleon Dynamite*
- *Pee-Wee's Big Adventure*
- *Night of the Living Dead UHF*
- *This Is Spinal Tap*
- *The Princess Bride*
- *Labyrinth*
- *Monty Python and the Holy Grail*
- *Heathers*
- *Scarface*
- *The Matrix*
- *Willa Wonka and the Chocolate Factory*
- *American Pie* (and sequels)
- *Caddyshack*
- *Rushmore*
- *Pulp Fiction*
- *Gone With The Wind*
- *The Big Lebowski*
- *Indiana Jones* (all three older movies)
- *The Breakfast Club*
- *Friday*
- *Half Baked*
- *Office Space*
- *Bruce Lee movies*
- *Juno*
- *Say Anything*

□ *Entertainment Weekly* published their list of "Top 50 Cult Movies" in their May 23, 2003 issue. It is available online at www.filmsite.org/cultfilmsew.html

Spotlight: Robert Englund



American leading actor of a number of horror films, probably best known as Freddy Krueger in *A Nightmare on Elm Street* (1984) and all of its sequels. Englund, a boyish, tall and gaunt figure, became a cult favorite after that film but had started working in the 1970s. He was cast as a sex-crazed maniac in *Eaten Alive* (1977) by Tobe Hooper, who also directed *The Texas Chain Saw Massacre* (1974). Englund went on to a number of low-budget horror films, including *Galaxy of Terror* (1981) and *The Fifth Floor* (1978). Then came his big break as Freddy Krueger in "Elm Street", the man of nightmares with the disfigured face and a red striped shirt with his right hand as razor-sharp knives. The film was directed by Wes Craven and was so successful for New Line Cinema that the company had Englund reprise Freddy in all of the subsequent — and wildly successful — sequels. He played the title role in the semi-remake of the horror film classic, *The Phantom of the Opera* (1989) for 21st Century Film Corporation. Englund has frequently worked with Hooper, in such films as *Night Terrors* (1995) and *The Mangler* (1995). (Retrieved from www.imdb.com/name/nm0000387/ on 6.4.12.)

Keeping Up

- www.hollywoodteenmovies.com
- sepnet.com/rcramer/index.htm
- Keep your eyes on the theaters and magazines. What are the top DVD sales? What are people quoting? What has a loyal fan base? What are comedians making fun of?

Thought Questions

- 1) What are the characteristics of a cult movie?
- 2) How can teachers and librarians capitalize on the intense interest in a cult movie to move teens in other interesting or instructional experiences?
- 3) Have relatively unknown stars of cult movies gone on to achieve success as actors and actresses?

12. Video Games

By Stephanie Espinoza

Video games have offered exciting and immersive worlds to get lost in for over half a century. Yet with their technology constantly improving and surprising us, they still feel shiny and new.

Video games date back to the 1950s and '60s, with American physicist William Higinbotham's *Tennis for Two* in 1958 (a two-player tennis game displayed on a 5-inch oscilloscope display) and MIT graduate students' *Spacewar!* in 1962.

The 1970s saw the rise of coin-operated arcade games. The table tennis game *PONG* appeared in American arcades in 1972 to overwhelming success, while a game designed to appeal to women and younger gamers—*Pac-Man*—appeared in Japan in 1979 and in the U.S. the following year. The success of *PONG* in the arcade led to the creation of a home version. Soon the idea of programmable gaming consoles took off so that consumers could buy “chips” to get new video games to play at home instead of having to purchase entirely new, and expensive, home consoles. It was during this period that video game giants such as Atari (the company behind *PONG*), Nintendo (Japan's perpetual powerhouse), and Sega got their start. Then in 1985, Nintendo brought its first home gaming console to America, dubbing it the Nintendo Entertainment System (NES) and releasing it with the game *Super Mario Bros*—a sequel to the *Mario Bros.* arcade hit. The popularity of Mario, his brother Luigi, and the game's theme of princess rescues continue to this day. Despite subsequent releases of consoles by Sega and Atari in the 1980s and 1990s, neither company has modern video game consoles.

Handheld gaming has survived the test of time, evolving from the 1989 Nintendo Game Boy (bundled with the puzzle game *Tetris*) to the 2004 Nintendo DS (a touchscreen console with two screens) that continues to gain new enhancements including 3-D gameplay in 2011. The electronics corporation Sony also released a handheld console in 2005, the PlayStation Portable (PSP), the first to play games and even movies on optical discs called UMDs.

But it was back in 1994 that Sony first began its massive dent in the video game market with its release of the CD-ROM PlayStation home console. Because CDs could store much more information than cartridges (which Nintendo continued to use for its Nintendo 64 console in 1996), video game graphics had now reached an entirely new level. This decade of video game history also brought about controversy regarding graphic game violence and its effect on young people. The Entertainment Software Rating Board was created in 1994 to provide ratings for games: Early childhood (EO), Everyone (E), Everyone 10 and up (E10+), Teen (T), Mature (M) and Adults Only (AO). Since there are no laws banning specific games, these ratings serve primarily as parental advisories.

In 2000, the PlayStation 2 was released, and would become the best-selling home console as of 2009. Nintendo also released a disc-playing console, the GameCube, in 2001, which received only moderate success. But that year, yet another video game giant was growing. Microsoft came out with the Xbox in 2001, a console featuring superior graphics, an online gaming service, and the immediately popular science fiction game series, *Halo*. It was also around this time that online games expanded beyond the late '90s releases of fantasy role playing games *Ultima Online* (1997) and *EverQuest* (1999) to the massive multiplayer online role-playing game *World of Warcraft* in 2004, which currently has over 11 million players.

Microsoft released its new Xbox 360 in 2005 and was immediately followed the next year by Sony's PlayStation 3 (which can also play DVD and Blu-Ray discs) and Nintendo's newest phenomenon: the Wii. With a wireless remote controller and motion-detecting device, the Wii introduced physical movement to games, allowing for more immersive environments. With the return of Nintendo classics such as Mario games and *The Legend of Zelda* series and the introduction of sports and action games where players' motions are tracked to control the motion of their digital counterparts, the Wii has proven to be fun for all ages. Microsoft took the idea of movement and developed the Kinect, a console that connects to the Xbox 360 and turns a person into a controller. It tracks a person's movement and translates it to the game, no controller required.

While consoles and games may be expensive for libraries to purchase, a donated system that hasn't quite yet become obsolete, such as the PlayStation 2, may be a beneficial tool for gaming programs such as *Rock Band* tournaments or just after-school free play. Computer games are another avenue to explore for the computers that a library already has. At the very least, lists of links to online games and gaming websites can be made available for teens, and video game magazines such as *GamePro* and *Electronic Gaming Monthly* can be easily stocked.

Popular Titles

1980s

Donkey Kong*
Pac-Man*
Super Mario Bros.*
Tetris*

1990s

Doom*
Final Fantasy*
Legend of Zelda*
Mario Kart*
Metroid*
Mortal Kombat*
Prince of Persia*
SimCity*
Sonic the Hedgehog*
Street Fighter II*
Super Mario 64*
Dance Dance Revolution

2000–Now

DragonBall Z
Final Fantasy XI online
Grand Theft Auto (and sequels)
Halo series
The Sims (and sequels)
WarCraft (and sequels)
Tony Hawk (any version)
Splinter Cell (and sequels)
Madden NFL (any)
Guitar Hero
Metal Gear series
Bioshock series
Portal
Katamari Damacy
Kingdom Hearts
Wii Fit
Batman: Arkham City

* indicates that newer versions of this game are popular today.

Caution: The list of today's popular games can go out of date very quickly. Look to Keeping Up for ways to stay up-to-date on popular games.

Spotlight: World of WarCraft

World of WarCraft is a popular game that allows players to enter into a fantasy world and control individuals similar to their favorite Lord of the Rings characters. This game is played online, and users pay a monthly fee to participate. Each player customizes the appearance of his human, elf, dwarf, gnome, orc, troll or other creature, and then he logs into the world. A user plays the game with others in his real world time zone. In the game, players must follow specific directions, learn to work as a team with other players, and enjoy challenging quests that necessitate strategy formulation. Each time a player completes a quest, he gains rewards that enable him to participate in increasingly difficult quests. Players can also communicate with each other. For example, if they hit "enter", and then type "/g", they can type a message to the group of people with whom they are participating in challenges. If they type other codes, they can type messages to individuals or other sets of people. Players also enjoy special computer commands that allow them to do such things as pretend to fall asleep. This gives the players in the group a good laugh. World of WarCraft involves great strategy and is a fun, though addictive, entertainment source.

Keeping Up

Magazines:

- *Game Pro*
- *Electronic Gaming*
- *Game Informer*
- *PC Gamer*

Websites:

- EB Games: www.ebgames.com/default.aspx
- GameSpot: www.gamespot.com
- Nintendo: www.nintendo.com
- PlayStation: us.playstation.com
- X-Box: www.xbox.com
- Game Informer: gameinformer.com
- CVG: www.computerandvideogames.com
- www.ign.com

Thought Questions

- 1) Interview a player of *Halo* (or sequels) and try to understand the motivation behind addiction to these and other games.
- 2) What redeeming qualities do the addicted claim for this activity?

13. Teens Online

It is possible that when a network of computers accessible globally was first conceived in the early sixties, the impact of the World Wide Web could not have been imagined. After years of scientific development, the World Wide Web became a reality in 1991. The use of the web grew throughout the nineties and the 21st century. Internet usage continues to grow in the United States, although the rate of growth has slowed. Teens are among the many users of the Internet. Studies indicate that 95% of teens are online.

Teens use the Internet in a variety of ways: communication, entertainment, and research. Teens are frequent users of social networking sites such Facebook. 80% of teens were on a social networking site as of 2011. Social networking sites allow teens to ‘hang out’ with friends through chatting, sharing sites, posting on walls, and playing games. Teens still engage in other online activities during that time — watching videos, listening to music, sending email, or chatting. The online environment allows teens to multi-task, communicating with several friends at once while participating in other online activities.

Teens Online	
Daily Access	93%
Visit entertainment sites	81%
Visit Social Networking Sites	80%
Read News; Get Information On Current Events	63%
Instant Message with Friends	60%
Watch videos (i.e. YouTube)	57%
Search for College Information	55%
Shop online	38%
Health Information	28%
Blog, Keep online journal	27%
Downloaded a podcast	19%
Visit Chat Room	18%
Maintain a website	11%

Another primary use of the online environment is entertainment. Even after the changing face of file-sharing, a majority of online teens still download music and videos, although they frequently do so in a legal manner, and an increasingly common practice will be to watch music and videos via a streaming service such as YouTube or Hulu. This is particularly true of videos that have gone ‘viral’ and receive a large number of hits.

There are additional forms of entertainment. Online gaming remains a popular activity, both interactive role-playing games and one-player video games. Teens still surf the web, using tools such as Tumblr and Stumbleupon to discover new content. And the favorite teen pastime of shopping? It’s here too. Teens use the Internet to “window shop” for everything, from sports equipment to prom dresses. They also participate in creating content for the Internet. While the number of teens participating in blogging is dropping off, they still create and post videos and art, write fan fiction, and create music mash-ups. In 2007, 57% of teens reported creating content for the web.

Besides entertainment, teens have not overlooked the role of the Internet in locating information. A majority of teens rely on the Internet to help with schoolwork, occasionally completing online assignments. We are beginning to see more and more virtual schooling. In Florida, the statewide virtual school served more than 20,000 secondary students. The number of virtual students among teens is still relatively small, but the use of the Internet for information continues to increase in importance.

The number of teens online had steadily increased as more options become available to teens — networked homes, schools, and public spaces as well as smartphones that allow them to access the Internet while “mobile.” 21% of teens who cannot otherwise go online report using their mobile phone to access the Internet. A quarter of all teens use their phone to access social networking sites. This is a growing segment of access, and mobile access to the Internet will continue to increase.

For those working with teens, awareness and understanding of the digital worlds of teens is a fundamental need. Exploring the communities and tools provides insight beyond the popular media constructions of the multitasking teen that participates daily in cyberbullying and sexting. While these activities occur, they are not necessarily as widespread as popular media would lead us to believe. Negotiating the fine line between invading the world of the teen and providing authentic and necessary service can be successfully done if one educates one's self about a teen's digital world. The difficulty is that this world is ever changing.

Networking with other professionals who work with teens can help maintain an awareness of the digital world of teens. What are the web sites teens are using? What are the online tools that can help a professional reach teens? What innovations are there in youth services? Fortunately the same digital world occupied by teens is also occupied by working teen advocates who blog, tweet, build wikis, and Facebook (or MySpace) to share ideas, make connections, and keep current on the online world of teens.

Library services for teens should acknowledge the disparate elements of the digital world. Academically provide research support, homework help, and building an "answer center"—a virtual library. Socially use networking tools to connect with teens. And in a programming sense, use the digital world to connect teens to the brick and mortar building and sponsor fan fiction writing groups, gaming tournaments, or YouTube film festivals.

Websites for Teens

Teen Space @ the Internet Public Library: A web portal for teens with links in several categories including the Arts, College and Careers, Sports, Style, and Money Matters: ipl.si.umich.edu/div/teen/

General Sites: Places to go for fun, news, games, advice, etc.

<http://www.gurl.com>
<http://www.smartgirl.org>
<http://www.cyberteens.com>
<http://www.spankmag.com>

Advice: There are a number of places online where teens can go for advice and information:

<http://www.teencentral.net>
<http://www.sxetc.org>

College and Careers: Information to help teens prepare for life after high school is readily available online, including college and scholarship searches:

<http://fastweb.monster.com>
<http://www.finaid.org>
<http://nces.ed.gov/ipeds/cool/index.asp>
<http://www.collegeboard.com>

Arts and Entertainment: Sites to visit for both recreational and informational needs.

Movies

<http://www.imdb.com>
<http://www.rottentomatoes.com>

Music

<http://www.artistdirect.com>
<http://www.itunes.com>

Blogging

<http://www.tumblr.com>
<http://www.blogger.com>

Fashion

<http://www.alloy.com>
<http://www.delias.com>

Spotlight: Web 2.0 Tools

Facebook/MySpace: The Pew Foundation has a fantastic social media study. Teens report that it is of great use. It will be of interest to librarians. Find the report at <http://www.pewinternet.org/Reports/2011/Teens-and-social-media/Part-1/Facebook-and-MySpace.aspx>

Nings: A more focused SNS. Nerdfighters (nerdfighters.ning.com) is an example of how a ning can work to bring teens together.

Twitter: While indications are that teens aren't flocking to Twitter, librarians can post updates on Twitter and widgets on websites can automatically update with new posts, so it can be effective even if teens aren't following the library.

YouTube: Libraries can create a channel for teens to create and share videos such as book trailers, library programming, etc.

Jing/Screencasting: Use these tools to make visual instructions for teens using your library.

Thought Questions

- 1) What is the role of the Internet in the library?
- 2) How can a library authentically address security and privacy concerns?
- 3) How can a library use social networking and Web 2.0 tools to connect with teens?

14. Horror Movies

By Rebecca Brodegard

The history of the horror film dates back to just before the turn of the twentieth century. The first horror film, *Le Manoir du Diable*, directed by Georges Melies, was also the first vampire movie. Lasting only two minutes, audiences were instantly captured and the horror movie phenomenon was born. After the turn of the twentieth century, in the early 1900s, horror movies grew in number in Europe. Hollywood picked up this genre in the 1930s and ran with it. Universal Studios created gothic-themed movies such as *Dracula*, *Frankenstein* (both 1931) and *The Mummy* (1932). Horror films seek to elicit a negative emotional reaction from viewers and play on the audience's primal fears.

During the 1950s, with the advent of the nuclear age and the space race, the tone of horror films shifted away from the gothic towards the modern. Aliens, and their threats of world domination, were now the feared creatures along with mutated people, plants, and insects. Two of the more popular films of this period were *The Thing From Another World* (1951) and *Invasion of the Body Snatchers* (1956). The late 1950s saw the advent of the gory horror films. Technology had changed, so filmmakers used this to their advantage to add blood and gore into their movies.

The late 1960s and early 1970s saw a move towards the occult and supernatural. The cost of making the films increased, but some of the greatest and most famous horror movies were created at this time. Some films of note during this era were *Rosemary's Baby*, *The Exorcist*, and *The Omen*. The '60s also ring of Alfred Hitchcock, a master at film that always left an unpleasant taste in your mouth. His film *Psycho* left everyone wary of motels and showers. The 1980s horror films began the trend of helpless teens being chased by supernatural human killers. The first, and maybe most notable, of these films was *Halloween*, followed by *Friday the 13th* and *Nightmare on Elm Street*.

In the 1990s and into the new millennium, horror films continued their slash-like nature with films like *I Know What You Did Last Summer* and *Jeepers Creepers*. Some movies were also made to put the "scare" back into the horror film without the gore. Such films included *The Sixth Sense*, *The Others*, and *The Blair Witch Project*. Also in the '90s there were the parodies on scary movies, such as the movie *Scary Movie*, a bawdy blending of parodies of the best in horror films.

Today, horror movies are still alive and well. A lot of the movies to come out early in the millennium borrowed from horror movies of the past, like *Halloween* and the Freddy and Jason movies from the 1980s. There are still horror films that relish on the gore, but there are plenty of scary movies that still depend on ghosts or other supernatural phenomenon to induce a scare. Horror is not going away, and its popularity with teenagers continues to grow. One of the confusing trends in the mixing of genres so that a horror movie could also have fantasy and supernatural components as well.

Popular Horror Films

1970s

- *Carrie*
- *The Exorcist*
- *Alien*
- *Jaws*
- *Dawn of the Dead*

1980s

- *The Texas Chainsaw Massacre*
- *Halloween*
- *Nightmare on Elm Street*
- *Poltergeist*
- *The Shining*
- *Friday the 13th*
- *Hellraiser*
- *Pet Sematary*
- *Return of the Living Dead*

1990s

- *Scream* (and sequels)
- *I Know What You Did Last Summer*
- *Blair Witch Project*
- *Silence of the Lambs*
- *The Sixth Sense*
- *Event Horizon*
- *Final Destination* (and sequels)

2000–Now

- *The Ring* (and sequel)
- *Halloween–Resurrection*
- *Final Destination*
- *Jeepers Creepers*
- *Freddy vs. Jason*
- *The Amityville Horror*
- *The Omen*
- *Disturbia*
- *28 Days Later* (& sequel *28 Weeks Later*)
- *I Know Who Killed Me*
- *Hellboy, Hellboy 2*
- *Prom Night*
- *Twilight* series
- *Terminator Salvation*
- *Predators*
- *Awake*
- *Super 8*
- *Underworld*

Spotlight: Ridley Scott



Sir Ridley Scott (born 30 November, 1937) is an English film director and producer. His most famous films include *The Duellists* (1977), *Alien* (1979), *Blade Runner* (1982), *Legend* (1985), *Black Rain* (1989), *Thelma & Louise* (1991), *Gladiator* (2000), *Hannibal* (2001), *Black Hawk Down* (2001), *Kingdom of Heaven* (2005), *American Gangster* (2007), *Body of Lies* (2008), and *Prometheus* (2012). Scott has been nominated for three Academy Awards for Directing, as well as Golden Globe and Emmy Awards. He was knighted in the 2003 New Year Honours. In 2011, Scott received a star on the Hollywood Walk of Fame. An article in Scientific American titled Ridley Scott's Prometheus Examines the Roots of *Alien's* Mythology is a must read <http://www.scientificamerican.com/article.cfm?id=ridley-scott-prometheus-alien>

Learn more about Ridley Scott:
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ridley_Scott

Keeping Up

Websites:

- www.upcominghorrormovies.com
- www.horror.com
- www.allhorrorfilms.com
- buried.com

Thought Questions

- 1) What attracts teens to horror movies?
- 2) Does the watching of horror movies (filled with gore, etc.) negatively contribute to teen development?
- 3) Are most teens mature enough to realize that horror movies are just that—movies?

15. Teen Movies

A History

By Rebecca Brodegard

As long as movies have been around, teenagers have been crowded in the audience. Movies had a very humble beginning. In the early 1900s, penny arcades had machines called kinetoscopes, which, for a penny, showed a short film. These short films grew in length, and as a result, the arcade owners developed nickelodeons. They set out chairs and charged a nickel to view these films. Parents believed that this activity was a crude destroyer of morality, but that didn't stop the kids. As movies grew, teenagers began attending the most frequently with their friends, and movies began to be a part of the dating scene. Movies also began to be the model for how teenagers wanted to live. Teenage girls sought for the perfect skin and figures of the actresses; boys sought for the charm and suaveness the actors portrayed.

The Depression launched movies into the big time. The automobile gave those in the country a means of getting to the movies. Gangster films and musical comedies were a hit. Teenage actors began to emerge. The most popular were Mickey Rooney (Andy Hardy films) and Judy Garland (*The Wizard of Oz*). Most films involving teenagers were happy and light. The 1940s saw another surge of teenage attendance at the movies. The majority went at least once a week; many went two or three times. Hollywood responded and created what are now called "bobby-soxer" films. They were set in upper-middle class suburban towns and the teens in them were happy and innocent. They showed a type of happy existence even with World War II raging overseas.

The 1950s was the breakout decade for teen films. These movies began to confront real issues and real teenage problems, like juvenile delinquency. Movies like *Rebel Without A Cause* and *The Wild One* made stars out of Marlon Brando and James Dean. They also made the jeans/leather jacket look popular. Scary science fiction films and "B" movies were popular around this decade, leading to today's horror films.

The 1960s brought about the beach party pictures. These movies were fun and comedic. The girls wore bikinis and the boys could usually surf. The 1970s was not a decade for teen films. Some great horror films came around this time, but most teens enjoyed the movies that their parents were also watching. Some classics from this decade are *Superman*, *The Godfather*, and *Saturday Night Fever*.

The 1980s saw an explosion of teenage movies; it could even be argued that this was the best decade for teenage movies. Not only did the movies talk about teenagers, they starred teenagers and addressed real teenage problems. John Hughes was the most popular director of movies dealing with teenagers. Most of his movies starred "the brat pack," a group of actors that were friends on and off the screen (see Spotlight). Comedies made a comeback for teenagers, some cruder than others, and horror films were also popular. Some of the prevailing movies of the day were *The Breakfast Club*, *Sixteen Candles*, *Better Off Dead*, National Lampoon movies, and many others.

The 1990s to the present have built on the '80s foundation. Teenage actors are still playing a major role in the movies for teens today. Teen movies still address real teen problems, like popularity, sex, drugs, pregnancy, etc. Blockbusters have caught the attention of teens as well. *Titanic* wasn't only an epic onscreen but an epic in the hearts of teenage girls. Comedies are still popular with teenagers and the all-prevalent horror films. More recently, the market has turned toward pre-teens and early teens.

Three Decades of Teen Movies

1980s

Back to the Future
Better Off Dead
The Breakfast Club
Ferris Bueller's Day Off
Pretty In Pink
Sixteen Candles
St. Elmo's Fire
Weird Science
Some Kind of Wonderful
Porky's
The Outsiders

1990s

Clueless
10 Things I Hate About You
Never Been Kissed
American Pie
Titanic
William Shakespeare's Romeo and Juliet
The Wedding Singer

2000–Now

Bring It On
Legally Blonde
A Walk to Remember
Save The Last Dance
Spider-Man (& sequels)
A Knight's Tale
Mean Girls
Napoleon Dynamite
High School Musical (& sequels)
Hairspray
Harry Potter series
Sisterhood of the Traveling Pants
Epic Movie
Twilight series
Step It Up
17 Again
The Sorcerer's Apprentice
Beastly
Footloose
Monte Carlo

Entertainment Weekly has released a list of their top 50 teen movies. View it at: www.ew.com/ew/article/0,,1532588,00.html

Spotlight: Teen Movie Franchises



In January, 2012 Lions Gate Entertainment bought Summit Entertainment. That purchase brought two powerhouse teen franchises, The Twilight Series and The Hunger Games, under one roof. The Hunger Games brought in \$155 million dollars in the US/Canada the first week breaking the record held for a non-sequel movie. The final movie in the Twilight series is set for release in November. Teen movies have real financial power in today's movie market and the two movies mentioned above could generate around \$450 million in profit combined.

Keeping Up

- Hollywood Teen Movies: www.hollywoodteenmovies.com
Offers the past and most recent popular teen movies.
- MTV: www.mtv.com
Includes a link for movies.
- www.teenhollywood.com
- Teen Choice Award winners: www.teenchoiceawards.com
- Check Local theaters—if it's starring a teenager, teenagers will most likely flock to it.

Thought Questions

- 1) What common elements are in popular teen movies?
- 2) Are those elements similar to or different from the common elements found in books for teen readers?

16. Pop Music

By Rebecca Brodegard

Pop music (short for popular music) has been around for ages. It is the music that is listened to by the vast majority of people. The style of pop music has changed over the years. Despite the change, pop music has always had a very simple melody and a beat that you want to tap your foot to. It's music that easily "gets stuck in your head" and is easy to sing along to. Pop music is a general term that can blanket any musical style that holds the public's attention.

Pop music had its beginnings with the invention of the phonograph. Music could now be carried into every home, instead of people making music themselves. Bands could now be brought to the masses. The 1900s were filled with ragtime, barbershop quartets, and brass bands. The 1920s brought Jazz and dance-filled rhythms to the pop scene. The 1940s consisted of the Big Band, with artists like Duke Ellington, Glenn Miller, and Benny Goodman. Bing Crosby was a huge hit and the further rise in Jazz brought Frank Sinatra and Nat "King" Cole to the stage. Rock 'n' Roll came around in the 1950s with Elvis Presley, but old greats like Nat King Cole remained in the spotlight.

The 1960s experienced a breakthrough for pop music. The face of the industry changed with the emergence of The Beatles. The British rock band gained the biggest following pop music had ever known. Along with Elvis Presley, rock 'n' roll became the most popular music in the world. Rock 'n' roll still continues today to make an impact on contemporary pop music. The '60s also brought R&B to the spotlight, with groups like The Temptations, The Four Tops, and Diana Ross & The Supremes.

The 1970s continued with rock's domination of the charts. The Beatles broke up, but Simon & Garfunkel and Fleetwood Mac picked up the spotlight. The Carpenters made softer rock well known while heavier rock came from Led Zeppelin and Pink Floyd. Disco was the pop music of the clubs while soul music kept its presence with The Jackson 5 and Gladys Knight & the Pips.

In the 1980s, pop's sound changed a bit. Music was created for the sole purpose of appealing to the masses. The two biggest names to emerge from this decade are Michael Jackson and Madonna. Heavy metal came into prominence with groups like Guns N' Roses, Motley Crue, and Whitesnake. Power pop emerged, which became a heavier rock version on the pop music Jackson and Madonna were creating. Power pop is shown with groups like Duran Duran and the Culture Club. Rap also was starting to emerge into the pop scene with Run DMC and LL Cool J.

The 1990s was the decade of women, rap, country, and alternative. Women broke out and the diva was now queen. Women like Jewel, Alanis Morissette, Whitney Houston, and Sarah McLachlan ruled the charts. Rap exploded and spread out of the ghettos. Country rose in prominence with LeAnn Rimes, the Dixie Chicks, and Clint Black. Alternative made it big with U2, Green Day, Stone Temple Pilots, and many more—a continuation of the power pop. The '90s was also the age of boy bands, like the Backstreet Boys and N'Sync.

Today, pop is still a continuation of the '90s. Rap and R&B rule the charts, with some power pop and rock making its appearance. Pop will continue to change as the public's, and especially teenager's, tastes change. Today's popular are tomorrow's forgotten.

Who's Who in Pop

1980s

Michael Jackson~
Madonna*
Whitney Houston~
New Kids On the Block
Debbie Gibson
Prince~
Cyndi Lauper
Bryan Adams
Janet Jackson*
U2*
INXS

1990s

Mariah Carey*
Jewel*
Alanis Morissette*
Boyz II Men
The Spice Girls
Backstreet Boys
Ricky Martin
Jennifer Lopez
Enrique Iglesias
Usher
Britney Spears*
Brandy

2000–Now

Beyonce
OutKast
Black Eyed Peas
John Mayer
Avril Lavigne
Sheryl Crow
Kelly Clarkson
Ashlee Simpson
Rihanna
Chris Brown
Carrie Underwood
Natasha Bedingfield
Jonas Brothers
Lady GaGa
Jason Mraz
Selena Gomez
Katy Perry
Justin Bieber
Adele
LMFAO
Maroon 5
Cody Simpson

* indicates still popular today
~indicates popular through '90s
(This list isn't complete. Look to references in "Keeping Up" for more complete lists.)

Spotlight: Lady Gaga

Stefani Joanne Angelina Germanotta was born on March 28, 1986 in New York City. Throughout her teenage years, she loved to perform and participated in many school productions. She dropped out of college to pursue her musical ambitions. She spent many years playing in bars and even had a couple record deals that fell through. Finally, in 2008, she was "discovered." She took on the stage name Lady Gaga (rumored to be a play on Queen's song "Radio Ga Ga") and her first record, *The Fame*, appeared in 2008. It hit number one around the world. From then on, Lady Gaga was a force to be reckoned with. Her subsequent albums, *The Fame Monster* (2009) and *Born This Way* (2011), have achieved record-breaking sales. Her single "Born This Way" sold one million copies on iTunes in only five days. Her music is not the only thing to turn heads. Lady Gaga's fashion stops people in their tracks. Her style borders the outrageous, but she is all entertainment. The crowds just keep clambering for more.

Keeping Up

Billboard's top lists — www.billboard.com

Website — www.popculturemadness.com/Music/
(has lists by month and year of the top songs and artists)

MTV — watch the channel or visit the website at www.mtv.com

RollingStone — magazine and website at www.rollingstone.com

Book: Whitburn, Joel. *Joel Whitburn Presents A Century of Pop Music: Year-By-Year Top 40 Rankings of the Songs & Artists That Shaped a Century*. (1999)

Movies

- Josie and The Pussycats
- That Thing You Do
- La Bamba
- Selena
- Grease

Thought Questions

- 1) What other ways for keeping up in pop music can you discover?
- 2) What kind of a teen network could you establish to keep up?

17. Downloading Music

A History

By Rebecca Brodegard

Downloading music from the Internet is a fairly recent phenomenon. It all started in 1999 with the creation of Napster by college student Shawn Fanning. This program allowed people to share MP3s (compressed audio files) over the Internet. Napster's popularity boomed, particularly with teens who were large consumers of music with a tradition of sharing music via mixed tapes and burning CDs. It seemed to work for everyone and had its roots in traditional teen behavior. You got the song you wanted without having to spend \$15 for the CD. Who could pass up free stuff?

Napster's clout didn't last long. Six months after its release, the Recording Industry Association of America (RIAA) sued Napster for copyright infringement. The site still stayed operational throughout its many legal battles and for a while the publicity made it more popular. In April 2000 Metallica sued Napster for copyright infringement and the court battle continued to grow. In February 2001, Napster offered a \$1 billion to the record industry to drop the suit. The industry refused. The site had to close down in September 2002 from bankruptcy.

While Napster was encountering problems, similar programs arose to fit the need for online file sharing. Various other sites and programs popped up: KaZaA, Morpheus, Grokster, and others. These various programs seemed to avoid being sued by keeping a low profile and sometimes requiring their users to pay a membership fee.

During 2003, the recording industry went after Internet service providers (ISPs), wanting the ISPs to disclose users who illegally downloaded music from the Internet. The main target of this attack, Verizon, fought back, appealing a lower court's decision to reveal their users. Verizon won with a decision by an appeals court in late 2003, allowing them to keep user's information private, and the recording industry backed off. This decision allowed the alternate file sharing programs to continue. During this time high profile arrests of teens that had downloaded music illegally also made news.

A new way of downloading music legitimately arose in 2003 when Steve Jobs, Apple Computer's CEO, announced the iTunes Music Store. iTunes allowed anyone to download a song for \$0.99, or a whole CD for \$9.99 with a few exceptions. The record companies could not say no, and DRM (Digital Rights Management) limiting sharing helped sweeten the deal. Here was a way to allow people to get music from the Internet in a legitimate, cheap way. Other services like Rhapsody have begun to compete. As the popularity of iPods and MP3 players grew, buying and finding music online is a more convenient way to get music to these players. iTunes has expanded the offerings to video, shows, and movies – also for reduced pricing and watchable on iPods and Nanos. In the past couple years there is a move toward DRM free music. This would allow multiple copies without copy protection. iTunes and Amazon are already offering a limited number of songs that are DRM free.

While music was the first frontier in downloads and illegal file sharing, teens can also download television shows, movies, and software via the same file sharing sites, as well as others, such as Pirate Bay. Recently movie companies have made public attempts at curbing illegal downloading. Streaming sites such as Pandora, Hulu, Netflix, Amazon, and/or network sites provide free or paid legal access making it easier for teens to access media. However, many of the other illegal services are still operating. As long as there is a demand for these services, they will always be around.

What's Legal

- Apple iTunes
- Amazon
- Napster 2.0
- Wal-Mart's eMusic
- Yahoo
- MusicMatch
- Rhapsody

Articles about legal digital download sites can be found at ezinearticles.com/?expert=John_Rivers or Copyright and File-Sharing University of Rochester <http://www.rochester.edu/it/security/yourself/file-sharing.html#LegalOrIllegal>

What's Questionable

- Sites that use the term "file-sharing"
- Morpheus
- KaZaA
- Limewire
- Aquisition
- Pirate Bay
- BitTorrent

How To Identify an Illegal Download Service:

- Site says it has unlimited downloads but doesn't offer a list of songs.
- Site keeps taking you to the "sign-up" page
- Uses the term "file-sharing"
- Check with www.pro-music.org to check the legality of your downloading service

Article to Help Avoid Piracy

- www.microsoft.com/piracy/ for illegal software.

Spotlight: iPod

When Napster hit the scene in 1999, MP3 players began to find their way into the market. These players are small and allow the user to have music wherever they go. These MP3 players were dominating the market, until the iPod came along. The first iPod was announced in October of 2001. It came in with a price tag of \$399, but it offered 5 GB hard drive (enough for 1,000 songs) and used a much better system of storing and playing songs. It only worked with Macs, but developers were quick to develop platform compatibility.

The following few years brought iPod to the top. Developers made the player compatible with PCs, introduced models with bigger storage space, and changed the look. iPods eventually became smaller and cheaper and took the MP3 player market by storm. The iPod continues to dominate MP3 player sales. At least 2 or 3 new versions of the iPod appear every year.

In 2005 Apple expanded their market. They announced the new iPod Shuffle, a player the size of a pack of gum and only costing a mere \$99. This player changed Apple's iPod industry because it was a way for everyone who couldn't afford a \$300 player to have an iPod. In 2006 Apple released the iPod Nano. Like the regular iPod, it has video capability, yet is smaller than most of its predecessors. 2007 brought even more changes. The Shuffle became smaller and cheaper. The iPod Touch appeared. With a touch screen, it has Internet capability. The iPod is no longer just for music.

What is in the future for the iPod? We all just have to wait and see. Keep up with iPod's changing face at www.apple.com

Read more: *Study: Teens Buy Less Music, Want More iPhones* by Graeme McMillan, April, 2011: <http://techland.time.com/2011/04/06/study-teens-buy-less-music-want-more-iphones/#ixzz1wqzjeOp>

Teens and Music: Some Fiction Titles

- *Revolution* by Jennifer Donnelly (2011)
- *Just Listen* by Sarah Dessen (2006)
- *Born to Rock* by Gordon Korman (2006)
- *The Last Days* by Scott Westerfeld (2006)
- *Nick and Norah's Infinite Playlist* by Rachel Cohn and David Levithan (2006)
- *King Dork* by Frank Protman (2006)

Thought Questions

- 1) How does the copyright law effect the sharing of music?
- 2) What role does the library play in teaching teens about copyright and music downloads?
- 3) In what ways can libraries leverage streaming sites to supplement teen services?

18. I Want My MTV

Teens and Television

By Rebecca Brodegard

From the beginning of television, teens have been engaged with its content. Up through the 1990s, watching television was more of a family activity. Teens did not necessarily watch TV by themselves. Most television shows were directed toward the family without trying to target teenagers specifically. In the 1980s popular shows consisted of *The Cosby Show*, *Miami Vice*, *Magnum P.I.*, and many others. But a new kind of television emerged in the 1980s with the creation of MTV.

MTV went on the air on August 1, 1981. It was a cable station that showed music videos twenty-four hours a day. As the station grew in popularity, it started to create television shows, but it still concentrated more on the music. The station played the popular songs and videos of the day. It started to target teenagers exclusively, playing “their kind” of music and directing all programming to the age group. MTV took off, especially with their “I want my MTV” campaign.

By the very late 1980s and early 1990s, the rest of television saw the potential of a teenage audience and started to create shows for and about teens. There was a mixture of comedies, dramas, and cartoons that arose to target a teen audience. Comedies included *Saved By the Bell*, *Sabrina the Teenage Witch*, *Boy Meets World*, and *Sister, Sister*. Dramas included *Beverly Hills 90210*, *Melrose Place*, *Felicity*, and *My So-Called Life*. Cartoons included the ever popular *The Simpsons*, *Beavis and Butt-head*, *South Park*, and *Daria*. No matter the genre, each show, in its own way, addressed the problems teens face everyday. They discussed issues from sex to drugs, dealing with parents to homework, friendships to relationships; whatever teens lived through, one of these shows would talk about it.

Teens also began watching soap operas, which began incorporating younger actors and storylines involving teens to keep their new audience interested. On the younger end of the spectrum, Cartoon Network began developing animated series for teens, including *Teen Titans* and *Toonami* shows. In the late '90s and early in the 21st century, the WB made a name for itself producing prime time television directed mostly at teenagers with *Buffy the Vampire Slayer*, *7th Heaven*, *Charmed*, and *Dawson's Creek*. The WB and UPN merged into The CW in 2006.

A new genre of television has emerged that teenagers have caught hold of: reality shows. It all began with CBS's *Survivor* and Fox's *American Idol*. They both were an instant hit with people of all ages. Now reality shows dot the prime time spots: *The Bachelor*, *The Amazing Race*, *Dancing with the Stars*, and so much more. MTV, whose programming now consists of more shows than music videos, has been doing versions of reality TV for years. Their series *The Real World* has been on for more than twenty seasons, and MTV continues to explore a variety of reality programming. So do other cable stations—most notably Bravo with two types of series: talent shows such as *Project Runway* (now on Lifetime), and the *Real Housewives of...* Series, including a NYC teen show airing in the summer of 2009.

Disney has also experienced success in recent years focusing on younger teens. The original television movie *High School Musical* led to two sequels, one in the theater, and numerous high schools across the country performing the show at their school. Miley Cyrus' show *Hannah Montana* has had similar success, turning the star into a popular celebrity. Recent stars from Disney include the Jonas Brothers, a popular music group, Demi Lovato (*Camp Rock*), Selena Gomez (*Wizards of Waverly Place*), and Ashley Tisdale.

Fox

- The Simpsons
- So You Think You Can Dance
- American Idol
- Glee
- Napoleon Dynamite

C.W.

- Smallville
- Gossip Girl
- One Tree Hill
- Supernatural
- America's Next Top Model
- 90210 (the remake)
- The Vampire Diaries

NBC

- The Office
- Saturday Night Live
- Days of our Lives
- Parks and Recreation

CBS

- Survivor
- The Big Bang Theory

ABC

- Grey's Anatomy
- Dancing with the Stars

MTV

- Real World
- Jersey Shore
- 16 and Pregnant
- Teen Wolf
- My Life as Liz

Other

- South Park (Comedy Central)
- Pretty Little Liars (ABC Family)
- Degrassi, The Next Generation (The N)
- Hannah Montana (Disney)
- The Secret Life of the American Teenager (ABC Family)
- Switched at Birth (ABC Family)
- Victorious (Nickelodeon)
- Everybody Hates Chris (Nickelodeon)

Spotlight: The Vampire Diaries

The Vampire Diaries is a supernatural drama television series developed by Kevin Williamson and Julie Plec, loosely based on the book series of the same name written by L. J. Smith. The series premiered on The CW Television Network on September 10, 2009. The series takes place in Mystic Falls, Virginia, a fictional small town haunted by supernatural beings since its settlement of migrants from New England in the late 17th century. The main focus of the series is the love triangle between the protagonist Elena Gilbert (Nina Dobrev) and vampire-brothers Stefan (Paul Wesley) and Damon Salvatore (Ian Somerhalder).

The series follows the life of Elena Gilbert (Nina Dobrev) a 17 year-old girl, who falls for a 162-year-old vampire named Stefan Salvatore (Paul Wesley). Their relationship becomes increasingly complicated as Stefan's vicious and malevolent older brother Damon Salvatore (Ian Somerhalder) returns with a plan to wreak havoc on the town and a revenge against his younger brother. Both brothers begin to show affection towards Elena, mainly because of her resemblance to their past love, Katherine Pierce. It is revealed that Elena is a descendant of Katherine, who eventually returns with plans against the trio. Season 3 just ended and Season 4 is scheduled to begin in October 2012. The Vampire Diaries won 7 Teen Choice Awards in 2010.

Retrieved http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Vampire_Diaries 6.4.12.

Keeping Up

What is popular on television including what teens are watching:

- TV Guide online: www.tvguide.com
- MTV: www.mtv.com
- Major network's websites: abc.go.com, www.nbc.com, www.cbs.com, www.fox.com
- Teen Nick (a teen version of Nickelodeon): www.teennick.com
- Teens are watching television online – check out www.hulu.com, or the “official websites” of networks.

Thought Questions

- 1) What themes tend to run through teen TV?
- 2) Is there a difference between what young men and young women watch?
- 3) What cultures are represented in teen TV?

19. Rap and Hip-Hop

The History

By Rebecca Brodegard

Rap, with its seemingly synonymous Hip-Hop, is a unique African-American form of music with chanted, rhyming lyrics and a strong background beat. Rap's roots include African tribal music, the blues, jazz, and soul. It developed in the inner cities, mainly in New York City where DJ Kool Herc brought the influences of reggae and dub poets with him from Jamaica. Hip-hop culture began to take shape, encompassing parties, clothes, and dancing (i.e. break dancing), as well as the music. Rap stayed in the inner city for some time. Record companies felt rap was a passing fad and refused to sign emerging rap artists. In 1979 Sugarhill Gang's "Rapper's Delight" was an instant success, selling more than 500,000 copies and rose to number one on the pop charts. Rap had hit the mainstream. Rap's popularity spread throughout the country, bringing the hip-hop culture with it.

There are six types of rap: old school, playa, message, gangsta, battle, and alternative.

- Old school encompasses the early, breakthrough rap. It is "generally enthusiastic and upbeat in both music and message."¹
- Playa rappers are those who rap to make money and live the high life. Some rappers labeled as playa rappers include L.L. Cool J, Run D.M.C., and Fresh Prince (Will Smith).
- Message rap is full of political statements and warnings against drugs and gangs. These rappers have a message and try to use their music to talk to their teenage audience.
- Gangsta rap became the most controversial type. It is full of violence and obscenity, telling of life on the streets with guns, women, gang wars, drugs, alcohol, and more. Gangsta rappers lived just as dangerously as their songs. Some examples include: Tupac Shakur and the Notorious B.I.G. died violently; Snoop Doggy Dog was accused of being an accessory to murder.
- Battle rap is on-the-street freestyle rap. Two rappers face off and the crowd decides who is better. This style of rap is best shown in the movie *8 Mile*.
- Alternative rap is the newest form of rap to emerge. It is a bit "softer" and the lyrics are more stream-of-conscious.

Even from its beginnings, rap has brought up controversy everywhere it goes. Rap has been accused of promoting sex, drugs, gangs, and even murder. The most controversial rapper of the 2000s was Eminem. His first album contained songs that spoke out against homosexuals, spoke of abusing women, and promoted a life on the streets. Parents hated him; kids loved him.

For those who believed that rap was just a fad and unimportant were proved wrong at the 2006 Oscars. Not only was the rap song "It's Hard Out Here for a Pimp" nominated in the best song category, it took the honors. Rap has imprinted itself on American culture for good and is here to stay.

¹ Haskins, James. *One nation under a groove: Rap music and its roots*. New York: Hyperion Books, 2000.

Who's Who

1980s

Sugarhill Gang
Grandmaster Flash
Run D.M.C. (first playa rappers)
L.L. Cool J
Jazzy Jeff and Fresh Prince
M.C. Hammer
KRS-One (message rap)
N.W.A. (Niggaz With Attitude)
Ice-T
Ice Cube
Salt-n-Pepa
Queen Latifah *
Vanilla Ice
Beastie Boys*

1990s

2 Live Crew
Snoop Doggy Dogg*
2Pac (Tupac Shakur)*
Notorious B.I.G.
Sean "Puffy" Combs*
Wu-Tang Clan*
Lil' Kim
Missy Elliott*
Busta Rhymes
Lauryn Hill*-alternative rap
Dr. Dre

2000s

Eminem*
OutKast
Eve
50-Cent
Black Eyed Peas
Gnarls Barkley
Jay-Z*
Ludacris*
Lil Wayne

Now

Kanye West
Mos Def
Drake
Ncki Minaj
DJ Khaled
Lupe Fiasco
Kid Ink

* indicates still popular today

Spotlight: Eminem



Marshal Mathers, aka Eminem or Slim Shady, was born on October 17, 1972 in Kansas City, Missouri. His childhood was spent moving between Detroit, Michigan and Kansas City, finally settling in Detroit when he was 12. Eminem changed high schools a lot, keeping him on the outside from his peers. Rap, particularly gangsta rap, became his outlet. He dropped out of school and worked different minimum wage jobs. Eminem went into the underground rap scene, trying to become part of the music he loved so much. The movie *8 Mile* is a loose autobiographical sketch of this period of his life. He released an album, *Infinite*, in 1996, but it was rejected. He started to work on his rapping style, doing what he wanted to do. He produced Slim Shady EP—his own album done his way. He went to the Rap Olympics in 1997 in Los Angeles, winning second place in the freestyle competition. Eminem made his way onto a radio show, where he caught the attention of Dr. Dre, a rapper and rap producer. Eminem's career took off from there. His record *The Slim Shady LP* debuted in 1999 and shot straight up the charts. Eminem became the most popular, and most controversial, rap artist of his day. He has since released many more albums including *The Marshall Mathers LP*, *The Eminem Show*, *Relapse*, and *Recovery*.

Official Website: <http://www.eminem.com>

Keeping Up

- Book: Haskins, James. *One Nation Under a Groove: Rap Music and its Roots*. Hyperion, 2000.
- Magazine: *The Vibe* — also at: www.vibe.com
- Magazine: *The Source: The Magazine of Hip-Hop Music, Culture & Politics* — also at: www.thesource.com
- Magazine: *MTV* — also at: www.mtv.com

Movies

- *8 Mile*
- *Boyz N the Hood*
- *Get Rich or Die Tryin*
- *Snipes*

Thought Question

- 1) What political as well as cultural statements come from the hip-hop performers and have they had any impact?

20. Alternative Music

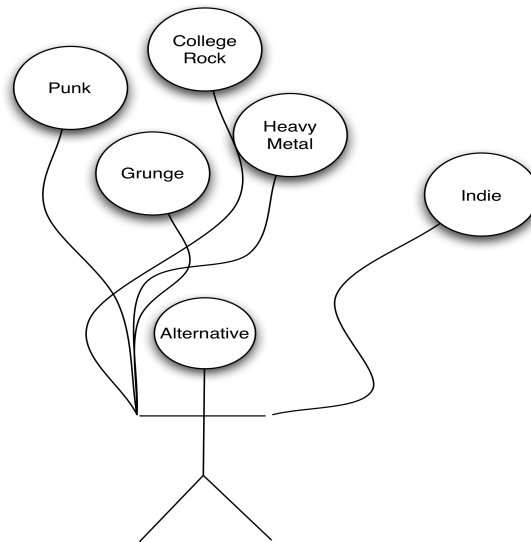
By Rebecca Brodegard

Alternative rock is the result of both grunge and heavy metal music. In the 1960s–1970s, there was a movement away from the public eye. Bands like The Velvet Underground and MC5 were combining intellectual lyrics with musical expression that were a bit different from the rock of the age. This movement developed into punk music, giving alternative music a more accessible format. Punk put the music into 3-chord progressions, simplifying it so anyone could learn and play it. Alternative music went through another change in the 1980s. It spread to college radio with bands like R.E.M., The Replacements, and Sonic Head. Thus it became “college rock” and stayed mostly underground until the release of Nirvana’s album *Nevermind*.

Nirvana brought to the spotlight a new type of music: grunge. “While previously ‘alternative’ was simply an umbrella term for a diverse collection of underground rock bands, Nirvana and similar groups fashioned it into a distinct style of guitar-based rock which combined elements of punk and [heavy] metal; their creation met with considerable commercial success.”¹ As popularity grew throughout the 1990s, many different groups did not agree with the new success of alternative music. Indie rock was formed. Indie artists returned to the original roots of alternative music, preferring to stay away from the public eye.

The term “alternative” encompasses many different kinds of bands. They vary from heavier material, like Linkin Park, to a bit softer style, like R.E.M. Today, alternative music can be found in garage bands and popular artists. Many alternative artists can be found on the Top 40 lists of today.

Alternative has come a long way, from the underground, garage punk bands to the mainstream pop scene. Wherever it is, it continues to change the way rock is created and performed.



¹ http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alternative_rock

Who's Who

1980s

R.E.M.*
Talking Heads
Sonic Youth
Replacements
The Cure*
They Might Be Giants*
Jane's Addiction
Oingo Boingo

1990s

Nirvana
Nine inch Nails
Stone Temple Pilots
Blind Melon
Green Day*
Beck*
Pearl Jam*
Korn*
U2*
Smashing Pumpkins*
Alanis Morissette*
Hole
Tori Amos*
Sarah McLaughlin*
Weezer*

2000–Now

Blink 182
Linkin Park
311
Dave Matthews
Good Charlotte
Godsmack
Rage Against the Machines
Liz Phair
Evanescence
All-American Rejects
AudioSlave
Coldplay
Sublime With Rome
Washed Out
The Black Keys
The Gaslight Anthem

* indicates still touring and releasing albums today

Spotlight: Coldplay



Coldplay is a British alternative rock band formed in 1996 by lead vocalist Chris Martin and lead guitarist Jonny Buckland at University College London. After they formed Pectoralz, Guy Berryman joined the group as a bassist and they changed their name to Starfish. Will Champion joined as a drummer, backing vocalist, and multi-instrumentalist, completing the line-up. Manager Phil Harvey is often considered an unofficial fifth member. The band renamed themselves "Coldplay" in 1998. They achieved worldwide fame with the release of the single "Yellow" in 2000, followed by their debut album released in the same year. The band has won a number of music awards throughout their career, including seven Brit Awards—winning Best British Group three times—four MTV Video Music Awards, and seven Grammy Awards from twenty nominations. As one of the world's best-selling music artists, Coldplay have sold over 55 million records worldwide. Coldplay have been an active supporter of various social and political causes, such as Oxfam's Make Trade Fair campaign and Amnesty International. The group have also performed at various charity projects such as Band Aid 20, Live 8, Sound Relief, Hope for Haiti Now: A Global Benefit for Earthquake Relief, The Secret Policeman's Ball, and the Teenage Cancer Trust. Retrieved: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Coldplay>

Keeping Up

- *Alternative Music Almanac* by A. Cross
- MTV Magazine or website: www.mtv.com
- Book: *A to X of Alternative Music* by Steve Taylor
- iTunes Music Store: See what's selling

Thought Questions

- 1) Is there anyone who can really define and identify alternative when they hear it?
- 2) A constant in popular music is change. What is your estimate of how long this type of music will last and, in fact, are there already hints of the future?

21. Mad About Magazines

Magazines have always been a reading staple of teens. Fewer teen magazines are being published in print form, and more moving into digital format exclusively. In 2003, teens cited magazines as their second favorite reading material.

Boy's Life magazine was first published in 1911 and eventually became the official magazine of The Boy Scouts of America. However, the first magazine to be published with a target audience of teenagers was Seventeen in 1944. Seventeen has remained popular and is a long-standing magazine often looked to as setting the trend in magazines. For example, in 2012, readers began a petition campaign to convince Seventeen to quit airbrushing models and to use "real girls" in their magazine.

Despite the dominance of Seventeen, other magazines have been popular. Once popular now-defunct print magazines include Sassy, Teen, and Teen People did influence current trends. Cosmogirl and Teen are online as part of the Seventeen website www.seventeen.com. Recently the trend has been towards "little sister" magazines such as CosmoGirl! (online only), Elle Girl (online only), and Teen Vogue. Teen fashion magazines developed to meet niche markets, including ethnic markets, but were often short lived. Teen Latinitas (online only - laslatinitas.com) has survived. Blackgirl (started by a teen) and Superonda have failed but other entities are utilizing the online domains for dating services, etc. Several magazines (Brio, and teen focused publications from Guideposts) were popular but they have ceased publication, in print and online. Few niche magazines remain.

Boys lean more towards subject-related magazines. Magazines developed and marketed to male teen readers have not been successful. However, many magazines marketed for adult males are successful with teens. These include sports magazines such as Sports Illustrated and music magazines such as Spin (www.spin.com/). One current magazine with a primary teen male readership is the hip-hop title The Source (www.thesource.com/). Another niche market previously successful with teen males (and "gaming girls") is the gaming magazine. However, the very first video game magazine, GamePro, ceased existence in December 2011. Electronic Gaming Monthly (since its 2010 relaunch) covers console hardware and software as well as, the PC and mobile gaming. Check www.egmmag.com/.

Online Magazines

The Internet has changed the face of publishing teen magazines. Most magazines have online companion sites or have begun publishing exclusively online. Companion sites have similar content to their print companions, but the dynamic nature of the web allows for updated content. Furthermore the multimedia nature of the web allows for a variety of content—videos, interactive polls, music, etc. There are two types of e-zines, or digital magazines: original sites and those developed from a print source. One successful example of an original site is gURL.com. gUrl's website has quizzes, dispenses advice, conducts polls, provides a moderated online community, and spotlights interviews with different women. Its success has allowed it to branch into publishing books. Another type of e-zine allows teens to submit art or writing for teen comment and criticism. TeenInk (www.teenink.com/) has both an online and print version and also allows teens to publish artwork and writing of all genres.

... And in other news

Not all teen magazines focus on fashion or hobbies. There are also teen news magazines, mostly published by Scholastic or Weekly Reader, and delivered through school classrooms. Some titles include:

- Odyssey Magazine: Adventures in Sciences (Ages 10–16). www.odysseymagazine.com
- New York Times Upfront (Ages 14–18). www.scholastic.com/upfront/
- Junior Scholastic (Ages 12–14). www.scholastic.com/juniorscholastic/
- Science World (Ages 12–18). teacher.scholastic.com/products/classmags/scienceworld.htm
- Current Events (Ages 12–16). www.weeklyreader.com/teachers/current_events/
- Current Health (Ages 12–18). www.weeklyreader.com/teens/current_health/
- Next Step Magazine: Your Life Teen Magazines Websites After High School (Ages 15–18). www.nextstepmagazine.com

Teen Magazines Websites

- Sister 2 Sister — www.s2smagazine.com
- Teen Ink — A magazine written by teens for teens. www.teenink.com
- J14 — Celebrity gossip for tweens. www.j-14.com
- Girls Life — www.girlslife.com
- Teen voices www.teenvoices.com/

Spotlight: Sassy, an Influence

In 1988, Sassy Magazine entered the teen magazine world and brought with it a new perspective on the world of fashion—a feminist approach whose influence continues to live well past its 1994 demise.

Sassy encouraged teens to examine their sexuality and to challenge sexism. Its influence brought the old guard to take note and revamp their magazines to return to a more wholesome image. Seventeen dropped their “make yourself beautiful for a guy” and “you must be thin to be popular” type of articles and have become more of a standard bearer for healthier female aspirations and images. Publishers began to realize that female readers were also interested in cars, humor, music, computer games, and other topics. After Sassy was absorbed in 1994 the content of the magazine reverted to articles more focused on beauty and popularity. Other magazines have also returned to content focused on the “right look,” how to “catch a boy” and other traditional female fashion magazine staples. And yet, the longing for Sassy lives on—teen fashion blogger Tavi Gevinson has expressed a wish for a Sassy magazine for the new millennium.

Alternative Titles

There is active debate and concern in regard to the negative body image and messages fashion magazines send to teen girls. Several magazines have been developed to offer positive alternatives to the thin, white, perfect models with their overt message of sexuality. For younger girls New Moon magazine (www.newmoon.com) is ad free, multicultural, and guided by an editorial board of young girls. Girl’s Life (www.girlslife.com/) for 10–15-year-olds attempts to achieve a balance of fashion, advice, and informational stories with a more positive image than the traditional magazines. For more information on the debate visit: www.mindonthemedia.com.

For current magazine lists check out the top ten lists at the All You Can Read site (allyoucanread.com). The top teen magazines are listed as are the top teen sports magazines and other specialty categories.

Thought Questions

- 1) What magazines interest teens you know? Why?
- 2) How does the popularity (and demise) of magazine titles mirror current culture?
- 3) What is the overall effect of the demise of the many print versions of magazines?

22. Celebrities

By Rebecca Brodegard

We all know who celebrities are. They act in our movies, play the sports we watch, populate our television shows, and sing the music we like. Basically anyone who gets society's attention in the media is a celebrity. They are young, old, skinny, fat, wild, and calm. So how do celebrities fit into the lives of teens? Open any teen magazine and you'll find out.

Celebrities influence the fashions that teenagers select. The celebrity images in magazines, on television, and at concerts and other public venues are watched closely and their choice of clothing is scrutinized. Magazines feature articles about dressing like the stars and even supply brand names and pricing information. Fashion trends begun on stage by teen idols are soon seen on teens from East to West.

The media barrage of information about the life stories and relationships of many celebrities bring the everyday lives of the celebrities into the world of teens, helping teens to make connections to the stars. All the information makes the stars normal people just like anyone else. Stars occasionally reveal parts of their personal life and those facts show up on television media shows or in teen magazines to be discussed by all who read or see the revelations.

Any actor that has a cute face is splashed all over media that is enjoyed by teenage girls. Girls may think a boy is cool and cute because he looks a little like Robert Pattinson. Teen males strive to emulate the celebrity look by copying hairstyles, clothing, and, in some cases, attempting to develop skills held by their idol whether it be related to music, sports, or celebrity life in general. The life of a celebrity woman is followed by both male and female teens. The fashions, hairstyles, make-up, fitness levels, and general body image influence the perception of beauty held by many teen girls (and seem also to be the touchstone used by males to judge the looks of females). Products these celebrities endorse become products teens buy.

Teens, especially reluctant readers, might be drawn into reading through books dealing with these celebrities. Books about any one of these celebrities or about concerts, sports events, and so forth involving these celebrities, might be the factor that draws an adverse reader into a circle of literacy. Many of these celebrities and their popularity are short-lived and thus, books about the celebrity might also be short-lived, but their value for attracting the marginal reader might well be worth the expenditure.

Celebrities will continue to be tracked and followed by teenagers. They play an important role in how teens will act, what fads they'll follow, and what products they'll buy. Teenagers pay good money to see the stars they love, and stars appeal to teens for that very purpose. So, although individuals may come and go, celebrities are here to stay and will remain a strong influence on the teens to come.

The American Library Association (ALA) has used the attraction of teens to celebrities by creating their "ALA Celebrity Reads" project. Celebrities from the world of sports, music, and other venues are invited to pose and be photographed reading a book of their own choice. The photographs are then used to create a poster with only a single word, READ, as its message. These posters represent a powerful endorsement for reading. Find out more about the project by visiting the project's page on ALA's website at <http://www.ala.org/ala/issues/toolsandpub/keymessages/aboutalaab/celebrityreadfactsheet.cfm>

Some Major Teen Celebrities

Movies

Dakota Fanning
Abigail Kathleen Breslin
Jessica Alba
Robert Pattinson
Shia LaBeouf
Emma Watson

Music

Beyonce
Hannah Montana (Miley Cyrus)*
Taylor Swift
Jonas Brothers
Justin Bieber
David Archuleta

Sports

David Beckham
Shaun White
Shawn Johnson
Serena Williams
Venus Williams

Television

Ashley Tisdale*
Zac Efron*
Selena Gomez*
Brendan Robinson
Lea Michele

* indicates star also appears in more than one type of media

Spotlight: Abigail Kathleen Breslin



Abigail Kathleen Breslin (born April 14, 1996) is one of the youngest actresses ever to be nominated for an Academy Award. Breslin's breakthrough role was in the 2006 comedy-drama *Little Miss Sunshine*, where she played Olive Hoover, a beauty pageant contestant, the youngest in a dysfunctional family on a road trip. Her co-stars, Greg Kinnear and Alan Arkin, both mentioned that they were "astounded by her seriousness of purpose during shooting." *Little Miss Sunshine* was a critical and commercial success, grossing \$100 million worldwide. Breslin received nominations for the Screen Actors Guild Award and Academy Award for Best Supporting Actress, becoming the fourth youngest actress to be nominated in that category. Her co-star, Alan Arkin, did not want her to win the award, specifying that he thought that she has "had enough attention" and "needs to have a childhood." Breslin recently started a rock band called "CABB" with her friend Cassidy Reiff.

Read more about Abigail via
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Abigail_Breslin

Keeping Up

- Keep an eye on the teen magazines: who's on the cover, note the celebrities that consistently show up in the magazines.
- MTV—website, magazine, and TV
- Watch advertisements: anything that a teen can buy, identify products teen celebrities are endorsing

Thought Questions

- 1) What additional celebrities could be added to the list included on this page?
- 2) How do celebrities influence young adult literature and other media?
- 3) In addition to ALA READ campaign, what are some other ways that teen celebrities might be used to promote reading?

Disclaimer:

This page goes out of date very quickly. Stars are constantly coming into the spotlight and others quickly get out. Don't depend too much on the list above; look to "Keeping Up" to help stay current.

23. The Kids are Alright... and So is Their Literature

The notion of what it means to be a teenager has been portrayed in a variety of different ways by media, including news, movies, music, and television. Often teenagers are constructed as “the other,” unfathomable to adults, a bundle of hormones that will do crazy things. This is not a new idea and has historical roots. In recent years teens have been demonized and deified, particularly in terms of technology. They are either digital natives—comfortable within the digital world who will and can produce works of art, social change, and/or change the notion of the workplace (Tapscott—Grown Up Digital)—or they are lazy, play too many video games, and lack critical thinking skills (Bauerlein—The Dumbest Generation). Those who work with teens know that the truth is more complicated than stereotypical notions, that teens are people and that as such they resist simple categorization.

YA literature suffers from some of the same oversimplified construction in the media. Common themes include a focus on series and the lack of “quality,” an outrage over sex that appears and the desire to protect “our children,” and the “darkness” or grim nature of YA literature. In 2006 Naomi Wolfe published a criticism in the New York Times of the Gossip Girl and Clique series and managed to leave uninformed readers with the impression that this was all there was for teenage girls to read, ignoring a wide range of quality, complex YA literature available. (“Young Adult Fiction: Wild Things” www.nytimes.com/2006/03/12/books/review/12wolf.html) A mere two years after publishing an article “It was, Like, All Dark and Stormy,” the Wall Street Journal published “Darkness Too Visible,” (2011) discussing the themes of cutting, eating disorders and dystopian universes in current YA fiction. This article prompted a trending response on Twitter #YAsaves, in which Tweets about how YA literature has impacted lives were shared. Other recent articles and media constructions include Glenn Beck bemoaning the lack of books with strong male characters in 2008, as well as a more thoughtful and positive article from Margo Rabb in the New York Times (July 2008). (“I’m YA and I’m O.K.” www.nytimes.com/2008/07/20/books/review/Rabb-t.html).

The oversimplified construction of YA literature by many adults as being exclusively series fiction and poorly written with questionable moral values has an inevitable role in the working life of youth librarians and teachers, as does the stereotypes of teens embraced by the media. It is the working librarian who is often faced with the concerned and/or angry parent who questions the inclusion of books highlighted by the media in a library collection. Over the years this has included: Nancy Drew and the Hardy Boys, Goosebumps, Sweet Valley High, Harry Potter, Gossip Girl, The Clique, Twilight and The Hunger Games. As may be evident from the list, these stereotypes and parental discussions are particularly true for librarians working with the ages we now refer to as tweens (ages 11–13).

As librarians and advocates for teens, awareness of brewing controversy and other media constructions is helpful. Having a well-reasoned response to such concerns, as well as a clear selection policy, at the ready can be particularly helpful. Knowing the answer to “Why do you have this on the shelf?” is an essential component of collection development. But this can also be viewed as an opportunity to advocate for teens and for YA literature. It is a chance to celebrate the diversity of available YA materials, to

present titles that may be ignored by mainstream media but embraced by teens.

This is true in dealing with media constructions of teens themselves as well. To return to the example in the first paragraph, librarians working with teens are well aware of the falseness of this particular dichotomy. While some teens are comfortable in the digital world, others are much less so. Some teens are fans of video games, others less so. This is of concern to the working librarian planning programming to support YA materials. Understanding the role video games play, and the benefits of games, may help alleviate criticism and introduce the adult public to a more positive construction of the experience. Recognizing the wide range of abilities and interests of teens regarding online experience can help when developing web sites and instructional programs. The fundamental principle is to recognize the wide variety of interest and abilities in teens; talk to them about their interests and needs so that you can serve them well.

Part of the role of understanding YA materials is understanding and being aware of the media myths of YA literature, particularly from those not as well versed as you will be/are. Part of the job is responding to and dispelling the myths. Staying aware of them will help you advocate for the diverse group of teens who walk through the library door.

▫

Keeping Up

Useful blogs for keeping up with current media articles about youth:

- ypulse.com
- bookshelvesofdoom.blogs.com
- yzocaet.blogspot.com

⋮

Thought Question

What are your biases regarding genre and quality?

24. Promoting Reading Among Young Adults

It is without a doubt that schooling in the United States is particularly concerned with literacy and reading. A number of government reports have highlighted the “literacy problem” in the United States. The most recent the NEA report “Reading at Risk” (2004) highlighted a decline in the reading of literature. However, it is important to note the limitations of the NEA report in its reference to “literature” which does not acknowledge the wide range of formats and reading that people participate in. Other reports driving educational policy have also focused on the difficulties young people have reading, with a prescriptive response of teaching reading strategies and little or no focus on the role of motivation in reading, particularly reading for pleasure.

Elaine K. McEwan in *Raising Reading Achievement in Middle and High School: Five Simple-to-Follow Strategies* (Corwin Press, 2006) presents five “teacher-friendly” strategies supporting the efforts to increase reading ability overall:

1. Focus on changing what you can change
2. Teach students who can't read how to read
3. Teach every student how to read to learn
4. Motivate all students to read more, to read increasingly more challenging books, and to be accountable for what they read
5. Create a reading culture in your school

Promotion of reading is a critical element in steps four and five. The importance of Stephen D. Krashen's research can not be overlooked. His findings, first published in *The Power of Reading* (2004) have been updated and reexamined in light of findings within the past ten years. The updated findings are published in *Free Voluntary Reading* (Libraries Unlimited, 2011). His studies clearly demonstrate the benefits of a reading environment that supports and promotes free voluntary reading as a means to increase and improve reading, comprehension, and vocabulary development. Krashen recommends that both children and teens will read more if they have easy access to large library collections, both in school and public libraries. This is particularly true of teens that come from less affluent environments where reading materials are not readily available. Libraries, well stocked and professionally staffed, play a large role in making reading material available and accessible to young adult readers. Librarians generally recognize that teen readers have specific reading tastes. Teens want to read a variety of books—preferably paperbacks, magazines, graphic novels, and a wide-range of informational material. Teachers can contribute to the reading environment by providing rotating classroom collections, promoting free voluntary reading, and providing time for that reading. Something fresh and interesting should be available to teens everywhere they turn.

In considering how to promote reading to teens, consider teens' interests and look beyond the curriculum in providing materials. Encourage time for pleasure reading unconstrained by classroom restrictions (i.e. comic books, magazines, etc). Provide and promote through display and marketing a variety of materials—fiction, non-fiction, graphic novels, zines, digital material, etc. Many teens are overscheduled: homework, extra-curricular activities, family, and work. Access to reading material is not enough. Teens also need time to read. Promoting free voluntary reading time is important. It is also important to consider the social nature of a teen's life and promote the social nature of reading through sharing and discussion. Social media tools can be particularly helpful in this respect.

In addition to providing access and promoting material within the school environment, teachers and librarians must join hands with all types of literacy organizations to promote,

interest, entice, or involve teens and the general community in reading. Here are just a few ideas:

- Encourage the reading of music lyrics, writing, poetry slams, and open microphone times in a “coffee house” atmosphere.
- Hold book discussions online, in the classroom, and in the library.
- Display a wide variety of books and magazines for reading fun and pleasure.
- Read aloud to groups of teens (yes, read aloud to teens—read poems, short stories, magazines articles, information about careers, chapters from books).
- Prepare booktalks for individuals, small groups, or classrooms of readers.
- Use books in interdisciplinary course work—historical fiction in social studies and humanities courses, biographies of scientists and mathematicians in science, mathematics, and career classes, and so forth.
- Promote writing: The more teens write the more they read—email, instant messages (IM), poems, short stories, letters to friends, thank you notes, and so forth.
- Provide images of role models reading:
 - Utilize the READ posters from the American Library Association (ALA)—(Online) www.alastore.ala.org > “products for Young Adults” > “posters.”
 - Create your own READ posters—www.alastore.ala.org > READ Design Studio Products (Cost of READ disc \$199.00)—(Consider asking teen experts to design your own brand of poster: develop a slogan, a graphic and use powerpoint to create the poster for printing at a commercial printer. For instructions, search the Web for “making posters with powerpoint”)
- Invite members of the community—the city’s mayor, an electrician, a homemaker, retired educators, members of the local sports teams, and others—to read during special weeks. Ask readers to share information about their careers and the importance of reading in that career.
- Provide time for teens to read. Model the efforts by reading yourself.
- Involve teens in the creation of “best books to read” lists. Publish in the school newspaper or on the school’s website.
- Participate in TEEN WEEK activities sponsored by the Young Adult Library Services Association (YALSA), a division of ALA. www.ala.org/teenread

Thought Questions

- 1) How might you make access to literacy easier and more convenient in your community?
- 2) What organizations or reading initiatives have been successful or could be successful in your community?
- 3) What community resources could be asked to sponsor literacy events in your area (author visits, book clubs, etc.)?
- 4) How can teachers capitalize on the various reading activities in their communities (book signings at bookstores, public readings, etc.)?

Spotlight: State Reading Awards

Many states have annual programs that involve teens in reading nominated books and voting to identify the most popular book. Authors are often invited to the state library convention or sponsoring agency to accept the awards that the teens have selected. Ask about award programs within your state.

- Texas—Tayshas
- South Carolina—Young Adult Book Award
- Minnesota—Youth Reading Awards
- New Jersey—Golden State Book Awards
- California—Young Reader Medal
- Georgia—Georgia Peach Award

Visit the gateway to state awards at McBookwords—State and Regional Awards
<http://tinyurl.com/ccbm7t>

25. Contemporary Realistic Fiction

Contemporary realistic fiction is a staple of Young Adult (YA) Literature. Contemporary realistic fiction is defined as books that have plots, characters, and settings that can be found in real life. The hallmarks of YA—first person narrative, coming of age story—lend themselves well to this genre. The success in the early years of Hinton and Cormier, who both wrote contemporary realistic fiction, helped cement this genre as the most popular in the YA field.

It is tempting to focus on the darker, grittier novels in the YA field but there are a wide variety of novels that do not focus on “edgy” issues that can be considered contemporary realistic fiction. Over the years the field has questioned: Will teenagers read about kids in loving families? About other teens who are doing well in school and headed to college? About kids who are comfortable with their physical development and have solid friendships? Often we find the answer is no, but that does not mean that every realistic novel deals with the extreme. One recent example is *Prom* (2005) by Laurie Halse Anderson written for teens who asked her for a novel about “kids like them.”

Realistic fiction in the 1990s tended to focus less on shock and titillation and more on excitement, romance, and optimism. It presented a wider worldview and less stereotyping. This resulted in parents being shown in a more balanced and convincing fashion. It also presented a diversity of approaches to problems connected with racism and ethnic identification. This has continued in the new millennium.

Contemporary realistic fiction covers a wide range of issues. Here are a few categories to consider as you try to cover the genre:

Families

“Traditional” family values were evident in stories by Paula Danziger and Isabelle Holland or Robert Newton Peck’s *A Day No Pigs Would Die* in the early years of YA fiction. In much of the realistic fiction for teens the parents are absent (or problematic) or rarely seen on the page, but you can see an evolution of the representation of family becoming more diverse and representative of society. Books by Deb Caletti and Sarah Dessen often explore normal (if sometimes dysfunctional) family relationships. Other titles have strong positive adult representation.

Coming-of-Age Stories

Judy Blume captured great attention early on with her stories of teenagers, turning the corner from eventful teen problems toward adult living. *Forever* (sex) and *Are You There, God? It’s Me, Margaret* (puberty) made the rounds of most teen readers. Today, numerous authors have their characters confront the adult world as a result of their teen problems. Coming of age is the hallmark of YA contemporary realistic fiction.

Problem Novels

The contemporary problem novel centers itself squarely in a troubling situation or fractured teen life. Our protagonist may be hooked on drugs, alienated from family, in trouble with the law, facing teen pregnancy, or trying to survive a dangerous neighborhood. Teen readers can often identify with these problems and may find comfort in the fact that others are

as miserable or as depressed as they are. In the '80s problem novels were often formulaic and didactic. More nuanced novels dealing with complex issues are the hallmark of current fiction, without necessarily "punishing" the character.

Contemporary Realistic Fiction and the Reader

Many believe that reading about problems experienced by others or by those caught up in an adventure can help young readers develop new interests and learn new ways of handling conflicts in their own lives. Coping and critical thinking are behavior traits that are often modeled through the actions of characters in books of realistic fiction.

It is important to remember that what might seem realistic to one reader may not seem realistic to another. A reader living on a farm in Iowa will very likely have a different view of everyday life than a child growing up in the inner city of Chicago or New York. Similarly, a child who has already experienced fleeing from Vietnam, surviving in a refugee camp, and coming to a strange new land will have a decidedly different view of life than a child born in the community where she or he still lives. A wide range of characters and ideas will bring a diversity of perspectives and experiences to realistic fiction. Use this diversity to help readers expand their own view of the world and the society in which they live.

A renewed focus on contemporary problems has some critics pointing to a new realism in books for young adults and openly worrying about books that have an agenda rather than a story to tell. One participant in an Internet forum on censorship quipped, "We need to involve readers with books that tell a good story, not books that have a 'message.' If someone has a message to send, they should use Federal Express." Others cite concerns about the characterization of minorities, the stereotyping of women, problems in contemporary society, gay and lesbian characters, and profane language. Some question whether realistic fiction is really reflecting society or contributing to the way society is developing. Calls for censorship of realistic fiction abound. What one group might view as constructive and valuable, others consider controversial. Another problem lies in the language. Because vernacular changes quickly, the language in these novels can become outdated.

Selecting the Best in Your Community

YA novels are plentiful and have enough diversity that both teachers and librarians will have many choices that will fit in their own community. Being sensitive to community values and to teen interests is essential in choosing the best of the genre that fits. A teacher or librarian who reads widely and talks about books with colleagues and teens is in a much easier position to select titles than a person who just reads reviews and makes as many guesses as educated judgments. For this genre read, talk, read, talk is a great plan to stay current.

Authors to Watch

Anderson, Laurie Halse
Brande, Robin
Burgess, Melvin
Caletti, Deb
Cohn, Rachel
Dessen, Sarah
Flinn, Alex
Giles, Gail
Green, John
Going, K.L.
Hesse, Karen
Hopkins, Ellen
Howe, James
Johnson, Maureen
Jones, Patrick
Klass, David
Koertge, Ron
Korman, Gordon
Levithan, David
Lockhart, E.
Lynch, Chris
Myers, Walter Dean
Rainfield, Cheryl
Sanchez, Alex
Scott, Elizabeth
Soto, Gary
Trueman, Terry
Wittlinger, Ellen
Wolff, Virginia Euwer

Coming of Age Titles

- Alexie, Sherman. *The Absolutely True Diary of a Part-Time Indian*. (2007)
- Anderson, Laurie Halse. *Speak!* (2001); *Twisted*. (2007); *Wintergirls*. (2009)
- Bray, Libba. *Going Bovine*. (2009)
- Crutcher, Chris. *Staying Fat for Sarah Byrnes*. (1995); *Deadline*. (2010)
- Caletti, Deb. *Stay*. (2011)
- de la Pena, Matt. *I Will Save You*. (2010)
- Green, John. *Looking for Alaska*. (2005); *An Abundance of Katherines*. (2007); *Paper Towns*. (2008); *Will Grayson, Will Grayson*. (2010); *The Fault in Our Stars*. (2012)
- Hopkins, Ellen. *Crank*. (2004); *Glass*. (2007); *Fallout*. (2010)
- Klass, David. *You Don't Know Me*. (2001)
- Cohn, Rachel and David Levithan. *Nick and Norah's Infinite Playlist*. (2006)
- Murdock, Catherine. *Dairy Queen*. (2007)
- Oliver, Lauren. *Before I Fall*. (2010)
- Schmidt, Gary, D. *The Wednesday Wars*. (2007)
- Scott, Elizabeth. *Living Dead Girl*. (2008)

Read What Others Say About YA Novels

- Teen Reading (ALA): www.ala.org/ala/yalsa/teenreading/teenreading.htm
- www.teenreads.com
- Richie's Picks: richiespicks.com

Thought Questions

- 1) What kinds of teens in your community appreciate reading about teens in books that seem to have the same problems they do?
- 2) What topics might have been taboo a decade ago that would not be taboo for today's teen reader?
- 3) What would make a teen novel controversial in your community?

26. On the Edge: YA Novels and Tough Issues

It started with S.E. Hinton. Her first novel, *The Outsiders* (1967), provided a picture of teens coping with violence and abuse. Since the publication of *The Outsiders*, YA literature has exposed teens to tough topics. Robert Cormier's vision of teen bullying and implicitly sanctioned violence, portrayed in *The Chocolate War* (1974), made his book the fourth most challenged book between 1990 and 2000. In fact, the success of the gritty teen reality novel has also led to some of the strongest criticism of YA novels. When Beatrice Sparks authored *Go Ask Alice* (1972), a "diary" of a teen drug addict, a formula for the successful teen "problem novel" emerged.

Teen problem novels deal with teens facing "tough issues" and often have tragic outcomes. Paul Zindel wrote of the consequences of sex, pregnancy, and abortion in *My Darling, My Hamburger* (1969). The formulaic nature of the problem novel leaves YA literature open to criticism, and problem novels receive the most attention. Those who bemoaned the death of YA literature in the 1980s were referring to the rise of teen series and the teen problem novel. Teen problem novels tend toward didactic story lines in which characters made "poor decisions" and are suffering the consequences of those decisions. Hence, girls who had sex became pregnant and drug addicts died. On occasion, the problem teen character turned their life around through rehabilitation or some form of "seeing the light."

Throughout the history of teen publishing, the "shocker" has existed. The shocker novel has challenged our notions of appropriate literature for teens, opened teens' eyes to the world around them, reminded teens that they are not alone, and encouraged teens to empathize with peers who might have deeper secrets than they can know. In the 1970s, novels by S.E. Hinton, M.E. Kerr, Judy Blume, Richard Peck, and Robert Cormier dealt with drugs, bullying, neglect, rape, sex, and gangs. Hinton's *That Was Then, This Is Now* (1971) explored one character's experiences with the drug scene. Richard Peck's *Are You In the House Alone?* (1976) introduced the concept of date rape to teens everywhere. In the 1980s, Chris Crutcher dealt with sexual abuse and suicide in *Running Loose* (1983) and more significantly in *Chinese Handcuffs* (1989). Walter Dean Myers wrote a frank and linguistically graphic view of the Vietnam War with *Fallen Angels* (1988). But perhaps the most innovative and edgy title came with Nancy Garden's

Issues and Titles: Memoirs

Hazing: *Goat: A Memoir* by Brad Land (2004)

Abuse: *I Know Why the Caged Bird Sings* by Maya Angelou (1970)

Drugs and Addiction: *Tweak* by Nic Sheff (2008)

Family Relationships: *Three Little Words: A Memoir* by Ashley Rhodes-Courter (2008)

Internet and Pedophilia: *A Girl's Life Online* by Katherine Tarbox (2000)

Mental Illness: *Devil in the Details: Scenes from an Obsessive Girlhood* by Jennifer Traig (2004)

Rape: *Lucky* by Alice Sebold (1999)

Sexual Abuse: *Learning to Swim* by Ann Turner (2000)

Suicide: *The Burn Journals* by Brett Runyon (2004)

Weight: *Wasted: A Memoir of Anorexia and Bulimia* by Marya Hornbacher (1998)

Girlbomb: *A Halfway Homeless Memoir* by Janice Erlbaum (2007)

Annie on My Mind (1982), a love story between two young girls. It was one of the first novels for young adults that dealt with homosexuality in an open and positive manner.

When the young adult novel began to make a comeback in the 1990s, there was concern over the bleak nature of some novels. *We All Fall Down* (1991) by Robert Cormier opens with teens randomly and viciously destroying a house. *When She Hollers* (1994) by Cynthia Voigt has a young girl contemplating homicide as a way to escape the sexual abuse she faces. Adam Rapp's *The Buffalo Tree* (1998) provides an unflinching look at juvenile detainees. However, other titles deal with tougher subjects with a lighter hand. Francesca Lia Block's magical realism of the Weetzie Bat books explore love and relationships, Steven Chobsky's *The Perks of Being a Wallflower* (1999) is a modern *Catcher in the Rye*, and Marion Dane Bauer brings together a number of short stories to examine the experience of gay and questioning teens in *Am I Blue?: Coming Out From the Silence* (1994).

In the first decade of the 21st Century, YA authors continue to introduce stories that many are concerned push the envelope but that explore the realities of some teens (one would hope a very small percentage). Sherman Alexie's *The Absolutely True Diary of a Part-Time Indian* (2008) explores issues of race, identity, alcoholism, and reservation life. Barry Lyga (*Boy Toy*, 2007) and Kathleen Jeffrie Johnson (*Gone*, 2007) explored issues of a sexual abuse between a female teacher and male student. Gail Giles (*Right Behind You*, 2007) and Anne Cassidy (*Looking for JJ*, 2007) introduced readers to adolescents who had killed another child. Elizabeth Scott wrote a terrifying and brutal novel about kidnapping and sexual abuse in 2009 called *Living Dead Girl*. Young Adult fiction continues to explore the margins.

As evidenced by the side bar fiction is not the only genre to deal with tough issues. Non-fiction memoirs introduce readers to everything from gang life (*Almost Running: La Vida Loca: Gang Days in LA*, 1993) to prison (*A Hole in My Life*, 2002) to the foster care system (*A Child Called It*, 1995). Beyond the memoir Janet Bode (*Heartbreak and Roses*, 1994) and S Beth Atkins (*Voices from the Street*, 1996) introduce young readers to real stories—dating abuse, rape, gangs. Often these “real life stories” are quite popular with teen readers.

The nature of adolescence lends itself to titles that explore issues such as developing sexuality, developing addictions, developing spirituality, and defining oneself. Often the journeys can be surprising, even disturbing, and the outcomes can leave us unsatisfied or without a true vision of hope. Honest literature can, however, open new worlds to teens. The stories can provide relief and comfort and can give voice to a teen's own story. Such honest accounts, however, beg challenges by parents and adults wishing to protect “children” from the knowledge these books contain. Walter Dean Myers' *Fallen Angels* faced numerous challenges for depicting the Vietnam War much too graphically. In response, Myers countered with comments about the irony of young men being sent into combat and death (his own brother “Sonny” was killed on his first day as a soldier in Vietnam) but yet censors would shield those same young people from reading about the situation.

Dealing with challenges can be an overwhelming experience, but the possibility of a challenge should not keep a library from providing quality literature to teens. Selection policies, as well as a good challenge policy, will make the process easier. Selection and censorship are discussed in this book in individual sections, and you should re-read those sections in considering sensitive and shocking material to include in your collection.

Recommended “On the Edge” Titles

- Hopkins, Ellen. *Crank* (2004), *Glass* (2007), *Fallout* (2010). Issue: Drugs
- Asher, Jay. *15 Reasons Why* (2007). Issue: Suicide
- Scott, Elizabeth. *Living Dead Girl* (2009). Issue: Kidnapping/Abuse; *Leftovers* (2008). Issue: Bullying
- Dean, Carolee. *Forget Me Not* (2012). Issue: Sexting and Bullying
- Anderson, Laurie Halse. *Winternights* (2009). Issue: Eating Disorders
- Brown, Jennifer. *Hate List* (2008). Issue: Bullying
- Efaw, Amy. *After* (2009). Issue: Infanticide
- Hoban, Julia. *Willow* (2009). Issue: Cutting, Grief
- Williams-Garcia, Rita. *Jumped* (2009). Issue: Violence
- Peters, Julie Anne. *By the Time You Read This, I’ll Be Dead* (2010) Issue: Suicide
- Zarr, Sara. *Once was Lost* (2009). Issue: Alcoholism; *Story of a Girl* (2007). Issue: Reputation
- Reinhardt, Dana. *Harmless* (2007). Issue: Lying/Rumors/Sexual Abuse
- Rapp, Adam. *The Children and the Wolves* (2012). Issue: Kidnapping

Spotlight: John Green



John Green is the New York Times bestselling author of *Looking for Alaska*, *An Abundance of Katherines*, and *Paper Towns*. He is also the coauthor, with David Levithan, of *Will Grayson, Will Grayson*. He was 2006 recipient of the Michael L. Printz Award, a 2009 Edgar Award winner, and has twice been a finalist for the Los Angeles Times Book Prize. Green’s books have been published in more than a dozen languages. His latest book released in 2012 is *The Fault in Our Stars*. The New York Time Book Review says it is “ A blend of melancholy, sweet, philosophical, and funny. Green shows us true love...and it is far more romantic than any sunset on the beach.”

Green’s book reviews have appeared in *The New York Times Book Review* and *Booklist*, a wonderful book review journal where he worked as a publishing assistant and production editor while writing *Looking for Alaska*. Green grew up in Orlando, Florida before attending Indian Springs School and then Kenyon College.

John Greene maintains one of the most interesting websites around. Visit it at <http://johngreenbooks.com>

Thought Questions

- 1) How do you answer a parent concerned about the subject matter of titles recommended for teens?
- 2) What role does community values play in your selection policy in regards to controversial titles?
- 3) Why might patron privacy be important for teens, and in the school setting how do you balance that with *in loco parentis*?

27. Quick Picks and Thin Books for Reluctant Readers

There are a number of teens who can be classified as “reluctant readers,” teens who don’t like to read for any number of reasons. Research reveals that teenagers are the most reluctant readers, and boys in particular either stop reading or drastically reduce the number of hours a week they spend reading when they enter puberty. There are several reasons someone may not read.

The first, and perhaps most obvious, reason a teen might be considered a reluctant reader is reading difficulties. Readers who struggle due to a learning disability, gaps in their education, or other difficulties will usually not enjoy reading. Reading is viewed as a chore, often related to school. We tend to focus on struggling readers as the majority of reluctant readers, which may be inaccurate. Exceptional students who are overloaded with assigned school reading and homework may not read (outside of classroom assignments) either. Stephen Krashen puts forth the notion that “access to books is the first step. A number of studies confirm that given access to comprehensible and interesting reading material, ... adolescents [will read].” *Literacy Campaigns: Access to Books is the First Step* by Stephen Krashen (Online) www.sdkrashen.com/articles/literacy_campaigns/all.html.

There are books that traditionally appeal to reluctant readers. Generally these books have cover art that appeals to teens. In today’s publishing world, covers are bright colors with limited graphics. *Jimi & Me* (2005) by Jamie Adoff is an excellent example of today’s successful cover art. Another enticing cover would be the eerily simple cover for Neil Gaiman’s *The Graveyard Book* (2008; Printz Award 2009). Illustrations and glossy photographs also appeal to reluctant readers, especially with non-fiction titles. The print on the pages should be larger but not too large, making it easy to read and extra white space is used to make the text less intimidating. DK (a publishing house known for its graphic and captioned scrapbook style of presentation) has continued to evolve and is often popular with reluctant readers. If the book is a fiction title, the hook should come within the first ten pages and the characters should be well defined and encourage visualization. The most successful plots for struggling readers are linear, action-filled, and fairly straightforward. Plots that are non-linear and character driven may not be successful. The most popular fiction books are those narratives with a singular point of view, a believable treatment of a topic, and humor.

Choice of reading material is an important factor in enticing reluctant readers to read more and to read often. Given free choice many will choose informational books (non-fiction). Topics that are current, sports and hobbies that are hot, and biographies with pictures on popular people often engage reluctant readers. Interest is a large factor in attracting reluctant readers of any age. A book about a high-interest topic can break all the other rules and still attract specific reluctant readers. Knowing your readers is always the best way to successfully engage readers.

For more tips about working with reluctant readers see

- Random House for High School Teachers | Guide for Reaching Reluctant Readers—www.randomhouse.com/highschool/RHI_magazine/reluctant_readers/
- YALSA (a division of ALA) has an annual top 10 list, dating back to 1997. Quick Picks for Reluctant Young Adult Readers www.ala.org/yalsa/booklists/quickpicks

Books to Know

Top Ten Quick Picks from ALA 2011 & 2012:

- Aguirre, Ann. *Enclave*. (2011)
- Almerico, Kendall and Tess Hottenroth. *Whoogles: Can a Dog Make a Woman Pregnant?...and Hundreds of Other Searches That Make You Ask 'Who Would Google That?'* (2010)
- Amason, Jessica and Blakeley, Richard. *This is Why You're Fat: Where Dreams Become Heart Attacks*. (2009)
- Beever, Julian. *Pavement Chalk Artist: The Three-Dimensional Drawings of Julian Beever*. (2010)
- Booth, Coe. *Bronxwood*. (2011)
- Brereton, Catherine, Philip Steele, and Hannah Wilson. *Warriors Versus Warriors: Ten Fighters, Five Battles, ONE WINNER*. (2009)
- Dugard, Jaycee. *A Stolen Life: A Memoir*. (2011)
- Elkeles, Simone. *Chain Reaction*. (2011)
- Elkeles, Simone. *Rules of Attraction: A Perfect Chemistry Novel*. (2010)
- Hasler, Nikol. *Sex: A Book for Teens: An Uncensored Guide to Your Body, Sex and Safety*. (2010)
- Haugen, Brenda. *The Zodiac Killer: Terror and Mystery*. (2010)
- Keplinger, Kody. *The D.U.F.F. (Designated Ugly Fat Friend)*. (2010)
- Neri, G. and Randy DuBurke. *Yummy: The Last Days of a Southside Shorty*. (2010)
- Patterson, James. *Middle School: The Worst Years of My Life*. Illus. by Lara Park and Chris Tebbets. (2011)
- Rainfield, Cheryl. *Scars*. (2010)
- Snider, Brandon. *D.C. Comics: The Ultimate Character Guide*. (2011)
- Summers, Courtney. *Some Girls Are*. (2010)
- TenNapel, Doug. *Ghostopolis*. (2011)
- Volponi, Paul. *Rikers High*. (2010)
- Von D, Kat with Sandra Bark. *The Tattoo Chronicles*. (2010)

Spotlight: Orca Soundings

In 2002 Orca, a publishing company based in Canada, began a new line called Soundings. Orca Soundings titles are high/low titles but have been more successful by breaking the traditional model of high/low books. Although all teen selections are written at a second to fifth grade reading level, the subject matter is strictly young adult. The books deal with name-calling, parental relationships, crime, and drugs. Well-known young adult authors write the titles, each approximately 100 pages long. The covers are realistic and eye catching. While the quality of each title varies overall, the Soundings books have proved popular with reluctant readers. www.us.orcabook.com

Recent releases include:

- *B Negative* by Vicki Grant (2011)
- *Breaking Point* by Lesley Choyce (2012)
- *Cellular* by Ellen Schwartz (2010)
- *Comeback* by Vicki Grant (2010)
- *Cuts Like a Knife* by Darlene Ryan (2012)
- *Fallout* by Nikki Tate (2011)
- *Infiltration* by Sean Rodman (2011)
- *Last Ride* by Laura Langston (2011)
- *One Way* by Norah McClintock (2012)
- *Outback* by Robin Stevenson (2011)
- *Redline* by Alex Van Tol (2011)
- *Riot Act* by Diane Tullson (2012)
- *Rock Star* by Adrian Chamberlain
- *Shattered* by Sarah N. Harvey (2011)
- *Viral* by Alex Van Tol (2011)

Thought Questions

- 1) What are the characteristics of a reluctant reader?
- 2) How important is access to books?
- 3) How can libraries work with reluctant readers to encourage reading?
- 4) How will programming encourage teens to experience the library?

28. Books for Girls (Interesting Enough for the Discerning Reader)

It would be easy to believe that the “chick lit” revolution started with the British invasion of *Bridget Jones’ Diary* in 1998 followed by the Georgia Nicolson books by Louise Rennison in 2000. This view would overlook so many titles that laid the groundwork for these titles. *Forever* by Judy Blume (1975) broke barriers when it related the story of two teens that fall in love, have sex, and are not “punished” by death, disease or pregnancy. Rather, they struggled with the emotional implications of a physical relationship.

As young adult literature entered the eighties, series fiction for girls became a staple in the publishing industry. Francine Pascal’s Sweet Valley High series (origin 1983) and its spin-offs were the standard bearers in the series industry and are the touchstones for other series such as Sweet Dreams, and Cheerleaders. In 1985 Phyllis Reynolds Naylor entered the field with her critically acclaimed Alice series. Over the years Alice has grown and developed coping with first boyfriends, peer pressure, and family, marking a unique series in which the character has aged throughout the long running series (21 books).

In the late 1990s the British invasion brought *Bridget Jones’ Diary* (Helen Fielding, 1998) followed by Louise Rennison’s books featuring Georgia Nicolson. Suddenly this genre was being watched. Meg Cabot capitalized on the phenomenon with The Princess Diaries series and Cecily von Ziegesar with *Gossip Girl*. The *Gossip Girl* series quickly gained popularity with its focus on high fashion and its snarky tone.

Read an interview with Kirsten Miller — “Author Interview: June 2006 | Teen Reads (Kirsten Miller)”. WEB. www.teenreads.com/authors/kristen-miller/news/interview-060906 (Note the author’s first name is Kirsten, however the URL for the cited webpage reads Kristen.

Not all series focus on fashion, dating and frenemies. In 2006, Kirsten Miller developed a series about girls (The Irregulars) who band together to protect New York’s secret underground world, the “Shadow City.” The anchor title, *Kiki Strike*, features Ananka Fishbein, a young, female mastermind—a girl who lives by her own set of rules (not all of them good). The obsession with boys, looks, and the glorious life have moved into the real world of adventure and excitement.

Another spy series is The Gallagher Girls by Ally Carter. These series are the children of Nancy Drew and demonstrate independent, strong female characters.

Romantic titles are also popular. The popularity of Stephenie Meyer’s Twilight series (*Twilight* [2005], *New Moon* [2006], *Eclipse* [2007], and *Breaking Dawn* [2008]) followed the romance between a vampire and a regular girl, and spawned movies and alignment with Team Edward and Team Jacob. Other romantic titles—more traditional girls coming-of-age novels—are authored by Sarah Dessen, Maureen Johnson, e. lockhart, Stephanie Perkins, Susane Colasanti, and Elizabeth Scott. Dessen, Scott, and Caletti’s protagonists often struggle with serious issues such as family, loss, rape, or pregnancy while experiencing first love. Maureen Johnson and e. lockhart write similar novels that are more comedic. Caletti was a National Book Awards finalist for her 2004, *Honey, Baby, Sweetheart*, and Lockhart was nominated for *The Disreputable History of Frankie Landau-Banks* (2008).

“Chick Lit” has developed into a genre with a wide range of material; serious and funny, quality and “summer beach read,” over-the-top and realistic, focused on fashion or girl power. But romance is still a popular genre for female readers.

21st Century Girl Power!

From body image and love to adventure and friendships.

- *The Year of Secret Assignments* (2004), *The Murder of Bindy Mackenzie* (2006), *The Ghosts of Ashbury High* (2010) by Jaclyn Moriarty. www.jaclynmoriarty.com
- *Bloom* (2007), *Perfect You* (2008), *Something Maybe* (2009), *Between Here and Forever* (2011), *Miracle* (2012) by Elizabeth Scott. www.elizabethwrites.com
- *What My Mother Doesn't Know* (2001), *What My Girlfriend Doesn't Know* (2007), and *One of Those Hideous Books Where the Mother Dies* (2003) by Sonya Sones. www.sonyasones.com
- *Gingerbread* (2003), *The Steps* (2004), *Shrimp* (2006), *Cupcake* (2008), *You Know Where to Find Me* (2009), *Two Steps Forward* (2006), *Very LeFreak* (2010) by Rachel Cohn. www.rachelcohn.com
- *Suite Scarlett* (2008), *Scarlett Fever* (2009), *The Last Little Blue Envelope* (2011), *The Name of the Star* (2011) by Maureen Johnson. www.maureenjohnsonbooks.com
- *The Summer I Turned Pretty* trilogy by Jenny Han. www.dearjennyhan.com
- *the treasure map of boys* (2009), *The Disreputable History of Frankie Landau-Banks* (2008), by e. lockhart. www.emilylockhart.com (pseudonym of Emily Jenkins)
- *In Search of Prince Charming* (2009), *Six Rules of Maybe* (2010), *The Story of Us* (2012) by Deb Caletti. www.debcaletti.com

Caution:

It is easy to fall into the trap of categorizing books by gender. This may lead many to make assumptions about readers that prove to be false. Remember: girls may like “boy” books, and boys may like “girl” books!

Touchstone Titles

- *Are You There God? It's Me, Margaret* by Judy Blume (1970)
- *The Cat Ate My Gymsuit* by Paula Danzinger (1974)
- *Forever* by Judy Blume (1975)
- *Are You in the House Alone* by Richard Peck (1976)
- *Homecoming* by Cynthia Voigt (1981)
- *Jacob, Have I Loved* by Katherine Paterson (1990)
- *The Face on the Milk Carton* by Caroline Cooney (1990)
- *Walk Two Moons* by Sharon Creech (1994)
- *Keeping the Moon* by Sarah Dessen (1999)
- *Angus, Thongs, and Full Frontal Snogging* by Louise Rennison (2000)
- *Dairy Queen* by Catherine Murdock (2006)
- *The Disreputable History of Frankie Landau-Banks* by e. lockhart (2009)

On the Horizon – Beauty Queens

In 2011 Libba Bray published a novel about a plane crash on island of teen beauty pageant contestants. More social commentary than a survival story: the girls must survive, expose their secrets, and defeat an evil corporate plot. Bray tells their story with humor, while providing social criticism of reality television, beauty pageants, corporate culture, and politics. With e. lockhart's *The Disreputable History of Frankie Landau-Banks*, a new feminism is emerging in YA.

Top Romance Novels (2012)

- *Angel Academy* by Cecily White
- *Canvas Crossers* by Natalie Vawter
- *Forget Tomorrow* by Pintip Dunn
- *The Matter of Souls* by Stephanie Winkelhake
- *Pandora's Clock* by Natalie Vawter
- *The Silent Sister* by M. Kassel (pseud. of Mega Macijauska)
- *The Suspicions of Cairo Jones* by Mary Danielson
- *Wired* by Romily Bernard

Thought Questions

- 1) What creates the idea that girls will read books with either boy or girl protagonists but boys will only read about boys?
- 2) Why are predictable romantic plots so attractive to female readers?
- 3) What trends in society are influencing the current trend to more emphasis on “real girl power”?

29. Boys Do Read

Do boys read? Of course they do, despite cries to the contrary. Research and anecdotal evidence suggest that boys read less and less as they hit their teen years, with the idea that reading consists of narrative fiction or the reading done in school. Young adult males read magazines, informational texts, graphic novels, science fiction and fantasy, and hobby books. They may read manuals, game codes, box scores or comics in the newspaper, and email (or text messages) between friends. So yes, boys do read. But are there books that boys will read?

Before the advent of young adult publishing, books published for teen males were often series. Tom Swift was a popular series, first published in 1910. Next came The Hardy Boys in 1927 and Chip Hilton in the 1950s. Boys looked outside of series for good reads as well. *The Catcher in the Rye* (1951) was published for adults, yet teens quickly took it as their own. Holden Caulfield's journey, his disillusionment with the phonies (adults), and the general disaffected tone still speak to twenty-first century teens.

The 1960s changed the way publishers addressed teens, including teen boys. Titles like *The Outsiders* by S.E. Hinton and Robert Lipsyte's *The Contender* appealed to teen boys. Robert Cormier's titles published in the 1970s, including *The Chocolate War* and *I Am the Cheese*, have male protagonists coping with problems that teen boys faced: bullying, relationships with parents and peers, etc. Jay Bennett specialized in mysteries with male protagonists who actively solved mysteries and faced danger. While early young adult books broke barriers, these books eventually settled into a "problem novel" formula that had little appeal to boys.

In the 1980s authors emerged that had strong male appeal. Walter Dean Myers entered the scene with such books as *Hoops* (1981) and *Fallen Angels* (1988). Gary Paulsen brought adventure and a lot of teen appeal with *Hatchet* (1987), a survival novel that was soon followed by other man vs. nature titles. Chris Crutcher authored novels that focused on athletic young men coping with various problems, including racism, prejudice, abuse, and disabilities.

In the 1990s Will Hobb's wilderness adventure books attracted wide readership among teen boys. Jerry Spinelli wrote books filled with humor and insight, including *Maniac McGee* (1990). Paul Zindel began publishing horror/monster stories such as *Loch* (1994) and *Rats* (1999). In 1998 Louis Sachar's *Holes* was published and became popular with all readers, particularly reluctant male readers. *Holes* became the 1999 Newbery Award winner and was later made into a successful movie. In recent years the Alex Ryder series by Anthony Horowitz has been a sure-fire hit with reluctant male readers. As more and more attention has been paid to boys and reading, more book lists and books for boys seem to appear. Jon Scieszka started a reading initiative directed at boys called "Guys Read" (www.guysread.com) and has a book: *Guys Write for Guys Read* (2005). These resources provide lists that guys would be attracted to and to help them feel more comfortable with reading. Although this site is flashy, it sometimes lacks a good list of recommendations. A more informative site for the male teen is Dr. Danny Brassell's Lazy Reader's Book Club (lazyreaders.com). Dr. Brassell tries to recommend books that are 250 pages or less and books that will have appeal to reluctant teen readers. A writer/educator, John Martin of Seattle, Washington, has developed a site, boysread.org, which includes many reviews that will appeal to reluctant teen male readers (and other age categories). The site is funded by Martin and with incidental donations including profits from "click through" purchases of books recommended on the site.

Science fiction and fantasy play a significant part in boys' reading. Popular series include Orson Scott Card's Ender's series, Terry Pratchett's *Discworld*, Robert Jordan's *Wheel of Time*,

Piers Anthony's Xanth series, Terry Brooks (any books), Philip Pullman's *His Dark Materials*, and of course J.K. Rowling's *Harry Potter*. Rick Riordan has become a rage in recent years. Readers may tend to read all of a series before moving to another reading choice.

Informational texts are often an overlooked genre of reading for boys. A male who won't read anything else may spend hours pouring over a book on cars or a biography of a favorite athlete. In 1988 DK publishing introduced the Eyewitness series. Ample white space, graphics, and chunks of text characterized DK publishing's Eyewitness series (1988) and spawned a popular format. Narrative non-fiction, such as *Stiff: The Curious Lives of Human Cadavers* by Mary Roach (2003) and *Phineas Gage: A Gruesome but True Story About Brain Science* (2002), has also proved popular with male readers, as well as highly illustrated informational books such as *A Nation's Hope: The Story of Boxing Legend Joe Louis*, by Matt de la Pena, with illustrations by Kadir Nelson (2011).

Touchstone Titles

- *The Contender* by Robert Lipsyte (1967)
- *The Chocolate War* by Robert Cormier (1974)
- *Hatchet* by Gary Paulsen (1987)
- *Maniac McGee* by Jerry Spinelli (1990)
- *Ironman* by Chris Crutcher (1995)
- *Harry Potter* series by J.K. Rowling
- *Monster* by Walter Dean Myers (1999)
- *Holes* by Louis Sachar (2000)
- Alex Ryder series by Anthony Horowitz (2001)
- *Eragon* by Christopher Paolini (2003)
- *The Lightning Thief* by Rick Riordan (2005)
- *Ball Don't Lie* by Matt de la Peña (2005)
- *Claws* by Will Weaver (2003)
- *Acceleration* by Graham McNamee (2003)
- *Demon Keeper* by Royce Buckingham (2007)
- *He Forgot to Say Goodbye* by Benjamin Alire Saenz (2008)
- *Trouble* by Gary D. Schmidt (2008)
- *The Spectacular Now* by Tim Tharp (2008)
- *Pop* by Gordon Korman (2009)
- *The Red Pyramid* (The Kane Chronicles) by Rick Riordan (2011)

Thought Questions

- 1) What do you think are the elements that make a book popular with male readers?
- 2) If you could choose only ONE book to be purchased in multiple copies for a group of middle school reluctant readers, what title would you purchase? Why?

Spotlight: Guys Read

Guys Read is a program that was started by Jon Scieszka. He sought to put reading on boys' "Fun Things to Do" list. Guys Read is simply a website and support group to get boys to read. On the website (www.guysread.com), there are lists of books for boys of all ages and information for forming your own Guys Read group. These groups aim to help teachers, librarians, and adults to pay attention to "boy books." The website provides free downloads of a poster, bookmarks, and stickers. There are also good hints for adults when dealing with boys and literature.

Non-Fiction (Information book) Options

- *Phineas Gage: A Gruesome but True Story About Brain Science* by John Fleischman (2002)
- *Left for Dead: A Young Man's Search for Justice for the USS Indianapolis* by Pete Nelson (2002)
- *Getting Away with Murder: The True Story of the Emmett Till Case* by Chris Crowe (2003)
- *The Radioactive Boy Scout: The True Story of a Boy and his Backyard Nuclear Reactor* by Ken Silverstein (2004)
- *10,000 Days of Thunder: A History of the Vietnam War* by Philip Caputo (2005)
- *The Trouble Begins at 8: The Life of Mark Twain in the Wild, Wild West* by Sid Fleischman (2008)
- *Chasing Lincoln's Killer* by James Swanson (2009)
- *Stitches* by David Small (2010)
- *The Notorious Benedict Arnold: A True Story of Adventure, Heroism, & Treachery* by Steve Sheinkin (2011)
- *Sugar Changed the World: A Story of Magic, Spice, Slavery, Freedom and Science* by Marc Aronson and Marina Budhos (2011)

30. Series Titles for Young Adult Readers

Teen readers, as do younger readers before them, gravitate toward books written as a series but are often ignored by educators as they are perceived to be somewhat of a lesser quality than books written as individual titles. But series books are often immensely popular with readers. The comfort of not having to acclimate to a new set of characters or a new setting with each book allows the reader to get right into the action or plot of the stories. Some readers are adamant about reading every book in absolute order. Because much of what is considered young adult literature ignores series fiction, librarians have some difficulty in managing it, yet more and more are separating series out into its own section. Some books are written to a formula for the writing, but other series are fresh and unique. The familiarity of series reading is a great aid to developing fluency among readers and building confidence in the less-able reader. There are series of books for younger teens, for older teens, for males, for females, for horse lovers, for mystery lovers, and for everyone in-between. Bibliographic resources that might be of assistance include:

- Thomas, Rebecca L. and Catherine Barr. *Popular Series Fiction for Middle School and Teen Readers*. Libraries Unlimited, 2008.
- Levetzow, Maria. "Young Adult Books in Series and Sequels." *Bettendorf Public Library Teens' Page*. www.bettendorflibrary.com/bpl-bin/series.pl
- *Mid-Continent Public Library—Juvenile Series and Sequels*.
<http://www.mcpl.lib.mo.us/readers/series/juv/>

Selected List of Popular Series for Readers

- *Ranger's Apprentice* by John Flanagan—A battle of good and evil finds Will at the center as a Ranger in training, a medieval CIA agent.
- *Artemis Fowl* by Eoin Colfer—Boy genius holds a fairy for ransom in the hopes of building his family fortune.
- *His Dark Materials* by Philip Pullman—Children cross worlds to fulfill their destinies in this unforgettable trilogy.
- *Sweep* by Cate Tiernan—New boy Cal introduces Morgan to Wicca, where she discovers she is a "blood witch."
- *The Clique* by Lisi Harrison—Mean girls in middle school.
- *Redwall* by Brian Jacques—In this animal kingdom, battles of good and evil are center stage.
- *Percy Jackson and the Olympians* by Rick Riordan—The modern day son of Poseidon, Percy often finds himself on an adventure to save his friends, or even Mt. Olympus.
- *Maximum Ride* by James Patterson—Genetically engineered teens with wings must save themselves and fight the secret government lab.
- *Chronicles of Prydain* by Lloyd Alexander—Adventure and enchantment, epic quest tales where good conquers evil.
- *Cirque du Freak* by Darren Shan—Two boys visit a weird traveling circus and adventure ensues, from joining vampires to training large spiders.
- *The 39 Clues* by Rick Riordan and others—Easy tween reads challenging everyone to find a treasure that will unfold across the ten-book series.

More Series Titles

- *Pretty Little Liars* by Sara Shepard
- *The Hunger Games* by Suzanne Collins
- *The Maze Runner* by John Dashner
- *A-List* by Zoey Dean
- *Gossip Girls* and *The It Girl* by Cecily von Ziegesar
- *Discworld* by Terry Pratchett
- *Hatchet* by Gary Paulson
- *The Lord of the Rings* by J.R.R. Tolkien
- *A Wrinkle in Time* by Madeleine L'Engle
- *Tales of the Frog Princess* by E.D. Baker
- *A Series of Unfortunate Events* by Lemony Snicket
- *Sisterhood of the Traveling Pants* by Ann Brashares
- *Sammy Keyes* by Wendelin Van Draanen
- *The Dark is Rising* by Susan Cooper
- *Nine Lives of Chloe King* by Liz Braswell
- *Twilight* by Stephenie Meyer
- *Young Bond* by Charlie Higson
- *The Circle Opens* by Tamora Pierce
- *Secrets of the Immortal Nicholas Flamel* by Michael Scott
- *Matched* by Ally Condie

Author Series (to name just a few)

- Caroline B. Cooney
- R.L. Stine
- Cynthia Voight
- Phyllis Reynolds Naylor
- Lois Duncan
- James Patterson
- Anthony Horowitz
- Cathy Hopkins
- Ellen Hopkins

Spotlight: Cassandra Clare



Cassandra Clare was born to American parents in Teheran, Iran and spent much of her childhood travelling the world with her family, including one trek through the Himalayas as a toddler where she spent a month living in her father's backpack. She lived in France, England and Switzerland before she was ten years old.

Since her family moved around so much, she found familiarity in books and went everywhere with a book under her arm. She spent her high school years in Los Angeles where she used to write stories to amuse her classmates, including an epic novel called "The Beautiful Cassandra" based on a Jane Austen short story of the same name (and which later inspired her current pen name).

After college, Cassie lived in Los Angeles and New York where she worked at various entertainment magazines and even some rather suspect tabloids where she reported on Brad and Angelina's world travels and Britney Spears' wardrobe malfunctions. She started working on her YA novel, *City of Bones*, in 2004, inspired by the urban landscape of Manhattan, her favourite city. She turned to writing fantasy fiction full time in 2006 and hopes never to have to write about Paris Hilton again. *City of Bones* evolved into one of the most popular series for teens *Mortal Instruments*.

Visit <http://www.cassandraclare.com> for more information on the author and her work.

Keeping Up

It is virtually impossible to keep up with the prolific nature of series fiction. Two great suggestions are to visit your local library and bookstores and compare what you find in both.

□

Thought Questions

- 1) Check the circulation system of a library near you to discover what teen series circulate. Compare this with the impression of the teen librarian of which series are actually read. Do these two sources of data match? If not, why not?
- 2) Interview several teenage girls and boys about their preferences for series books. What percentage of their reading is series versus non-series?

31. Don't Judge a Book by its Movie

For many or perhaps most teens, movies have replaced books as the central focus of entertainment. We may complain about the “Hollywoodization” of literature that we are certain should have been experienced only as a print/personal experience, but most teachers and librarians are resigned to the fact that movies may be the only way to motivate teens to experience a real book. There are exceptions, of course, as the *Harry Potter* phenomenon or *Lord of the Rings* trilogy books-to-movie events have brought intense scrutiny into the filmmakers’ interpretation. For these few exceptions, there is no end to the possibilities for discussion, comparison, and delicious controversy sparking both movie and literary criticism. As anyone who has been to the movies lately knows, Hollywood is in desperate need of good scripts to feed their multi-billion-dollar industry. And Hollywood often turns to books for plots and ideas. We usually classify the tie between movies and books into three categories:

Movies made from books in an attempt to be faithful to the original.

Adaptations or modernizations of a book

Original movies for which a novel appears close to the movie release date.

In the first category, *The Hunger Games*, *Twilight*, *A Series of Unfortunate Events*, the Harry Potter movies, *Holes*, or *The Mighty (Freak the Mighty)* try to stick as close to the books as possible given that a typical movie script is about 40 pages of dialogue compared to several hundred pages of feelings, actions and dialogue in the book. Just say to almost any teen: “*The Fellowship of the Ring* was the most faithful to the book, but I liked *The Return of the King* best,” and you are sure to get a response that might make you wish you hadn’t expressed an opinion. English teachers, desperate to teach the classics, often search for the best play-to-movie interpretation to help young people understand the plots so they can teach the nuances of the language and the deep meanings of the text as both film and word merge. For many teens, if they experience the “classics” at all, it is through film, and we hope they have seen a good one. History teachers may also use film adaptation to encourage the reading of books and the in-depth study of events. Examples include *Schindler’s List*, *Cold Mountain*, *Seabiscuit*, or even *October Sky*.

In the category of adapted films, Hollywood takes great liberties with the original text to create something they feel will appeal to a modern audience. The most obvious example is Disney’s adaptation of the story of Aladdin and the folktales of Snow White, Cinderella, and Mulan. Hollywood never tires of adapting Shakespeare as evidenced by *10 Things I Hate About You (Taming of the Shrew)*, *O (Othello)*, and *William Shakespeare’s Romeo and Juliet* (1996 with Leonardo DiCaprio and Claire Danes). Sometimes Hollywood’s version actually improves upon the book, such as *Forrest Gump*. In any case such adaptations provide plenty of opportunity for teachers and librarians to compare and contrast what Hollywood does versus the original intent of the author. For example, *The Village* was adapted from *The Messenger* by Phyllis Reynolds Naylor. Both versions are fascinating in their own right as they sometimes duplicate and at other times depart in the plot and action sequences. The latest rage is to use comic books as a source of plots, mostly adapted from the series as a whole. Titles include *The Avengers*, *Batman*, *Spiderman*, *The Hulk*, *Green Lantern*, *Transformers*, and *Thor*, to name a few.

In the last category, original scripts are adapted to print as a promotional event corresponding with the release of the movie. We think of *Star Wars* and *Star Trek* that have triggered entire series of books because their movie scripts grabbed the imagination of audiences everywhere and left enough space for more stories to be told. Other successful movie novelizations include *Whale Rider*, *The Matrix*, *Titanic*, and *Buffy: The Vampire Slayer*.

To teens, informational books that supplement the movie are more interesting. DK publishing has had success with its *Star Wars Visual Dictionaries* and *Cross-Sections*. *The Matrix* (1999) was very popular with teens, and the two books, *The Art of The Matrix* (2000) and *Beyond the Matrix*:

Revolutions and Revelations (2004), also have a teen audience. As special effects become more complicated, books that detail the movie making find their way into the market. It is not surprising to find whole books on the making of...

There is now a whole new culture developing around movies and books as Hollywood tries to maximize its revenues. DVDs or Blue Ray with Director's cuts, accompanying books packaged with the DVD, websites, discussion groups, chat rooms, documentaries on making of the movie, and action figures are just a small sampling of spin-offs. These give plenty of room for movie-book discussions, screenings, read-ins leading to critical writing, and perhaps even teens creating a movie adaptation of their own.

YA Books to Films and Films to YA Books

Movie Title (Book Title)

- *The Hunger Games*
- *Confessions of a Teenage Drama Queen*
- *The Golden Compass*
- *Speak*
- *Princess Diaries**
- *How to Deal (That Summer and Someone Like You)*
- *Whale Rider*
- *Millions**
- *Holes*
- *I Know What You Did Last Summer*
- *The Outsiders, Tex, and Rumble Fish*
- *A Cry in the Wild (Hatchet)*
- *The Mighty (Freak the Mighty)*
- *Angus* (Short Story in *Athletic Shorts*)
- *Because of Winn-Dixie**
- Harry Potter (all 7)
- *The Chosen*
- *The Seeker (The Dark is Rising)*
- *Sisterhood of the Traveling Pants*
- *The Chronicles of Narnia* (3 movies)
- *Hoot*
- *Twilight Series*
- *Inkheart**
- *Alice in Wonderland*
- *The Lovely Bones*
- *Disney's A Christmas Carol*
- *The Boy in the Striped Pajamas*

* For a younger audience

To keep up-to-date on this genre, visit www.teenreads.com

Spotlight: Mean Girls

In 2002 Rosalind Wiseman published *Queen Bees and Wannabees*. The book was an exploration of emotional bullying and teen girls' social structure. The audience was composed of the parents of teen girls, and the book was a revelation to many.

Tina Fey, of Saturday Night Live fame, read the book and saw in it potential for a movie. She adapted the book for a movie, and in 2004 *Mean Girls*, starring Lindsey Lohan, hit movie screens across the United States. It was a novel idea: turn a pop psychology book for parents into a movie for teens. The outcome may have been considered less than successful. While the movie successfully illustrated the techniques girls use to manipulate and control one another, the overall message of the book may have been lost in the comedy of the movie. Still, it was an interesting experiment in crossover appeal.

Also published on the topic are *Odd Girl Out* (2002) (also a movie on Lifetime television) and *Odd Girl Speaks Out* (2004) by Rachel Simmons.

Thought Questions

- 1) What techniques could teachers use to explore classical literature through the use of film?
- 2) What types of activities centered in the library could capitalize on the interest of a teen blockbuster in the original book?
- 3) What book would you like to see as a movie? Who would star in the film?

32. Christian Romance and Literature

By Tracey Wilson

Most of the Christian fiction books marketed for young women tend to be romance stories. A great number of these books deal with the issue of sexual abstinence before marriage, a commonly held belief among many Christians that is based on Biblical passages. Understandably, this is a topic of much concern among Christian teens that find that most of their non-Christian peers are already sexually involved. These books deal with the reality of peer pressure and attempt to provide a Biblical perspective on relationships and intimacy. Christian romances usually describe situations in which the protagonist struggles with the pressure to become sexually involved, but with support from a network of Christian friends or family the protagonist finds that she can be romantically involved without having sex. Christian publishers tend to market books with similar themes in the genre, explaining why several books have only slightly different plots. For example, many of the female protagonists in fantasy or period romances were sterling models of Christian behaviour, and though they face various temptations, they successfully resist those temptations. Publishers know these are popular with a particular audience, so they continue to market them.

Upon saying that, there is an effort by authors to expand fiction romance to address a public that is embracing secular romances and romantic comedies. As a result, a number of series are loosely based on secular movies or books. For example, *The Yada Yada Prayer Group* series by Neta Jackson is a Christian version of the secular *Ya Ya Sisterhood*. In general most Christian fiction has a very strong thread of morality throughout. Conversion remains the backbone of evangelical stories, but more and more Christian novels being published today concern the messiness and issues of everyday life. Christian fiction has become less dogmatic and overt in an effort to embrace a larger readership.

Young adult romance is marketed to the following audiences: pre-teen and teen. Pre-teen romances are generally more “innocent” and predominantly deal with issues of friendship and first love. Romantic plots and sub-plots are less obvious and are not always the primary theme. In contrast, teen romance tends to feature a protagonist of marrying age and more complex romantic plots with more permanent outcomes. They are frequently more reality-based. Aside from age divisions, these romances can also be divided into the following categories: period romance, allegories, realistic fiction, and devotionals. Period romance takes place in a historical setting and portrays life as it most likely was experienced during that historical period. Allegories feature symbolic fictional figures and actions of truths or generalizations about human existence, and realistic fiction deals with modern issues confronted by today’s Christian teenagers: sex, peer pressure, body image, drugs, and other relevant issues. Devotional romances are typically written to be meditative and often pose questions to the reader intended to prompt reflection.

Christian Advice for Teens

There is no shortage of adult advice for the Christian teen on every aspect of teen living with a Christian perspective. Titles include

- *Not a Fan: What Does It Mean to Really Follow Jesus*. Teen ed. by Kyle Idleman (Zondervan) (2012)
- *God Wants You Happy* by Johnathan Morris (2011)
- *Getting to Heaven* by Don Piper (2011)

A Sampling of Christian Lit

- Munn, Heather and Lydia Munn. *How Huge the Night*. (2012)
- Dickerson, Melanie. *The Healer's Apprentice*. (2010)
- Martinusen-Coloma, Cindy. *Beautiful*. (2009)
- Mason, Mike. *The Blue Umbrella*. (2009)
- Pererson, Andrew. *North! Or Be Eaten*. (2009)
- Samson, Lisa. *Hollywood Nobody*. (2008)
- Clipston, Amy. *Reckless Heart*. (2011)
- Leppard, L.G. *Mandie and the Secret Tunnel (Mandie Mysteries)*. (1983)

Thought Question

Can you make a list of YA romance books, not necessarily Christian, where the characters live high moral and virtuous lives as a part of their religious beliefs?

Web Resources

Best-selling author Robin Jones Gunn's website:
www.robjgunn.com

Christian and inspirational fiction information and links:
www.overbooked.org/genres/inspirational/

Christian Romance Book Club:
www.heartsongpresents.com

Christy Awards: www.christyawards.com

Evangelical Christian Publishers Association:
www.ecpa.org

Other Recent Recommended Romantic Reads

- Rue, Nancy. *Motorcycles, Sushi, and One Strange Book*. (2010)
- Rogers, Jonathan. *The Charlatan's Boy*. (2010)
- Gunn, Robin Jones. *Until Tomorrow*. (2008)
- Ryan, Carrie. *In the Forest of Hands and Teeth*. (2009)
- Adima, Shelley. *The Fruit of My Lipstick*. (2008)
- Dickerson, Melanie. *The Merchant's Daughter*. (2012)
- Bergen, Lisa T. *Waterfall*. (2012)
- Carlcon, Melody. *Stealing Bradford*. (2008)
- Herald, Diana Trixie. *Genreflecting: Christian Fiction*. 6th ed. (2005)

GLBTQ Literature for Teens

Different studies suggest different numbers, but it is safe to assume that there are Gay, Lesbian, Bisexual, Transgender, and Questioning teens (GLBTQ) in your classroom or library. The history of GLBTQ literature for teens is not unlike the history of young adult literature in general. According to www.glbtc.com only five novels were published in the eight years between 1969 and 1976, with gay and lesbian themes: John Donovan's *I'll Get There. It Better Be Worth the Trip* (1969), Isabelle Holland's *The Man without a Face* (1970), Sandra Scoppettone's *Trying Hard to Hear You* (1974), Rosa Guy's *Ruby* (1976), and Mary W. Sullivan's *What's This About, Pete?* (1976). But since then, the number has increased significantly. As the field struggles to catch up with mainstream titles, GLBTQ literature continues to be dominated by male characters in white middle class settings. But that has began to change—just as mainstream young adult literature has emerged with more diversity than it once had.

Nancy Garden's *Annie on My Mind* (1982) created a milestone in GLBTQ literature when she wrote the gentle love story between two girls. That isn't to say *Annie on My Mind* doesn't have its share of teen angst and eventual sorrow. However, the quality of the story redeemed it from being another problem novel in which the characters are punished for their homosexuality. While the two lesbian teachers are fired from their teaching positions, the main characters find some support from family and potentially find their way back to each other. In 2003 Nancy Garden received the Margaret A. Edwards award, largely from the strength of *Annie*. The '80s also brought readers *Night Kites* (1986) in which the main character's family struggles not only with the news that the oldest brother is gay, but that he is dying of AIDS. Other titles during that era, in which characters dealt with AIDS, placed the disease on family members instead of the main character.

A new era was ushered in when over two decades ago, in 1989, Francesca Lia Block authored *Weetzie Bat*. Block introduced characters that dealt with their sexuality in a frank manner. It was not, however, the major conflict in the novel. When Dirk came out the result was a blended family: Dirk, Weetzie, Weetzie's Secret Agent Lover Man, his daughter, Witch Baby, and their daughter, Cherokee Bat. Ellen Wittlinger's *Hard Love* (1999), published on the cusp of the millennium, explored a new theme: a straight boy with a crush on a lesbian. Titles began to appear in which gay and lesbian characters had healthy, productive lives, or openly gay characters face other problem-novel type issues.

David Levithan's book *Boy Meets Boy* (2003) introduced a world where characters not only know they are gay by kindergarten, but their homosexuality is accepted, the cheerleaders ride Harley's, and the quarterback is also the homecoming queen. *Boy Meets Boy* is light-hearted; it treats all characters equally whether they're gay, straight, or cross-dressing. In 2004, Julie Ann Peters published *Luna*, a story about a transgender teen, and three years later Ellen Wittlinger published *Parrotfish* (2007) about the same topic. In the new millennium Alex Sanchez, Brent Hartinger, Julie Peters, David Leviathan, and Brian Sloan consistently publish novels that show a diverse range of quality GLBTQ literature.

For a thorough and analytical analysis of history of GLBTQ literature read Melinda Kanner's essay on Young Adult Literature in the online publication: *GLBTQ: An Encyclopedia of Gay, Lesbian, Bisexual, Transgender, & Queer Culture*. The essay (updated August 2008) can be read at www.glbtc.com/literature/young_adult_lit.html

Titles to Consider

In addition to the titles cited in the preceding paragraphs consider reading the following exemplary GLBTQ teen books.

- *Keeshia's House* by Helen Frost (2007)
- *The Geography Club* by Brent Hartinger (2004); *Order of the Poison Oak* (2006); *Split Screen* (2007)
- *Wide Awake* by David Levithan (2006)
- *Will Grayson, Will Grayson* by David Levithan and John Green (2010)
- *Rainbow Boys* (2001), *So Hard to Say* (2006), *Rainbow Road* (2005), *Getting It* (2006) by Alex Sanchez
- *Keeping You a Secret* (2005), *Far from Xanadu* (2007), *Luna* (2006), *Rage: A Love Story* (2009) by Julie Ann Peters
- *Tale of Two Summers* (2006), *A Really Fine Prom* **Mess** (2008) by David Sloan
- *Empress of the World* (2003), *The Rules for Hearts* (2007) by Sara Ryan
- *Shine* (2011) by Lauren Myracle

Keeping Up—Professional Resources

The Heart Has Its Reasons: Young Adult Literature with Gay/Lesbian/Queer Content (1969-2004) by Michael Cart and Christine A. Jenkins (Scarecrow, 2006). Examines historical changes and critical commentary with annotated bibliographies of related fiction.

Spotlight: Julie Ann Peters

Julie Ann Peters spent decades establishing herself as an author of children's books. Having just completed *Define "Normal"*—the story of a psycho freaky punker and a "normal" teen—she was feeling quite successful. And then, in 2000, Peters's editor asked her to write a book about teenage lesbians falling in love. Peters was very surprised and very apprehensive. At first she thought writing such a book might be the death of her writing career. As an "out lesbian" she knew the subject well and also knew the need for literature that dealt with the subject honestly. But she also knew writing such a book was likely to change her life forever. And it did, but not exactly in the way Peters envisioned. Three years later, in 2003, *Keeping You a Secret* was released to stunning success. That success encouraged her to write more books for the GLBTQ teen reader. Peters's book about a transgendered teen, *Luna* (2004), was nominated for a National Book Award. It did not win but the experience was affirming for both Peters and her partner of more than three decades, Sherri Leggett. It was Sherri who inspired the character in *Far from Xanadu* (2005). Mike, a butch lesbian, falls in love with a straight female. This book, besides having the gay theme, is humorous. *Between Mom and Jo* (2006) is an exploration of the relationship between a young man and his mother and with his other mom. When the moms break up, the teenager is caught in the middle and wants to stay with his non-biological mom. Fortunately for him, his biological mom loves him enough to let him go.

More recently *Rage: A Love Story* (2009) explores a dangerous relationship between two teenage girls. In 2010, Peters explores another aspect of teen existence. The book, *By the Time You Read This, I'll Be Dead*, has the reader going along with Daelyn as he looks at "23 days and counting." Learn more about Julie Anne Peters and her books on her website www.julieannepeters.com

On the Representation of GLBTQ Teens

"It is not only a librarian's job to make this representation as welcoming and as accurate as possible. It is a librarian's obligation to do so." —David Levithan

From "Supporting gay teen literature: an advocate speaks out for representation on library shelves." *School Library Journal*. October 2004.

34. Teen Books in a Variety of Formats

In the wonderful world of technology, new formats have opened the doors for many teens to enjoy literature and non-fiction both for school and for pleasure. The most obvious format is audio books, which is now available as cassettes, CDs, or MP3 files for iPods or other listening devices. Still other formats, such as Braille, large print books, or e-books that can be either read by the user or read by technology to the user, provide avenues for those with disabilities and everyone else through devices such as the Kindle or iPad. Today, literally any print that can be shown on a screen can also be read aloud by a computer. This includes email, word-processed documents, and also pdf formats. Consider the many reasons for using these technologies to promote reading.

1. Teens with language difficulties
2. Teens with learning disabilities
3. Teens with visual problems
4. Teens who lag behind in comprehension or are challenged with normal reading
5. Teens who are accustomed to reading and writing online and to using Kindles or iPads.

Even to avid readers who have time to spare while riding in cars or buses, or that just enjoy books being read aloud, audio books can provide a wonderful change of pace, particularly when the performers are exceptional, making an audio experience superior in some ways to the reading experience. For example, one thinks of Judy Kaye's reading of any of the Sue Grafton novels that bring Kinsey Millhone's personality alive. Or one can experience the Grammy-Award-winning Jim Dale's reading of the Harry Potter series. And then there are the Los Angeles Players' renditions of many plays read aloud that are understandable and exciting when done in the audio format. Few teens would read *Away Laughing on a Fast Camel: Even More Confessions of Georgia Nickolson* by Louise Rennison, but they would be fascinated by the hilarious audio rendition read by the author (Listening Library, 2005) in the real British flavor.

In any case for an audio experience, the reader is everything. Let us repeat: the reader is everything. Nothing is worse than a voice with a drone or a gushy, over dramatic rendition. Once you've heard Jim Dale's presentation of *Harry Potter*, you know what high quality audio is, and you can use him as the standard to achieve by any other audio reader. The pace of the reading and flawless pronunciation are also important qualities for any audio reader. Some readers try to change their voices for different characters, such as Dale's 20+ voices for differing characters. Others are successful at reading multiple parts using cadence rather than vocal character imitation. By the time you have listened to 10 or more audio renditions, you certainly pick up the ability to judge quality when choosing audio books.

For books in unique formats, such as large print or print that must be spoken by computer or magnified by cameras such as Jordy or Kindle, working with individual teens with disabilities will provide a repertoire for what works and what doesn't work for particular individuals. All libraries and classrooms should have a variety of assistive devices to help open the world of print to every teen. And don't forget the services to the blind from the Library of Congress. They are now distributing audio books as MP3 files that can be downloaded directly from their website and they have a new digital cartridge player (2009).

List of Great Audio Books

- *Alchemy and Meggie Swann* (2010). Read by Katherine Kellgren. Listening Library.
- *Because of Winn Dixie* by Kate DiCamillo (2001). Read by Cherry Jones. Listening Library.
- *Bible Has a Voice* (2008) Old and New Testaments; many actors. Zondervan.
- *Eragon* by Christopher Paolini (2003). Read by Gerard Doyle. Listening Library.
- *Fat Kid Rules the World* by K. L. Going (2003). Read by Matthew Lillard. Listening Library.
- *Graveyard Book* by Neil Gaiman (2009). HarperCollins Audio.
- *Harry Potter* books by J.K. Rowling. Read by Jim Dale. Listening Library.
- *If I Stay* by Gayle Forman (2009). Read by Kirsten Potter. Penguin Audio.
- *Indigo Notebook* by Laura Nesau (2009). Read by Justine Eyre. Listening Library.
- *Marcelo in the Real World* by Francisco Stork (2009). Read by Lincoln Hoppe. Listening Library.
- *Speak* by Laurie Halse Anderson (2004). Read by Mandy Siegfried. Listening Library.
- *Tree Girl* by Ben Mikaelson (2009). Read by Amber Sealey. Listening Library.
- *True Meaning of Sneakday* by Adam Rex (2010). Read by Bahni Turpin. Listening Library.
- *Truth About Forever* by Sarah Dessen (2005). Read by Stina Nielsen. Recorded Books.
- *Wildwood Dancing* by Juliet Marillier (2007). Read by Kim Mai Guest. Listening Library.
- *Zen and the Art of Faking It* by Jordan Sonnenblick (2007). Read by Mike Chamberlain. Listening Library.

Spotlight: Carolyn McCormick



AudioFile awarded Carolyn McCormick with 2009 Best Voice in Young Adult for *The Hunger Games* and *Catching Fire*. Having previously narrated murder mysteries from Tess Gerritsen, James Patterson, and Chelsea Cain, Carolyn McCormick made a triumphant entrance into young adult audiobooks with Suzanne Collins's *The Hunger Games*, "a riveting dystopia story of a fascist United States, where rebellious districts are punished by the government with the annual Reaping." The sequel, *Catching Fire*, picks up shortly after where *The Hunger Games* left off. Our review raves, "McCormick delivers the first-person narrative of Katniss, the heroine whose brilliant strategy turned her and her partner, Peeta, into victors. McCormick's phrasing is clipped, almost staccato, a style that embodies Katniss's secretive, wary attitudes. At the climax McCormick narrates at a breakneck pace as Katniss and Peeta compete against all previous winners of the combat tournament. Listeners will be eager for the next installment." We're equally eager to hear more from Carolyn McCormick. Episodic TV is also a regular haunt for Carolyn; a long-running role was psychologist Dr. Olivet in "Law & Order: SVU. Retrieved from: <http://www.audiofilemagazine.com/gvpages/a1684.shtml>

Companies Making Quality Recordings Available for All Readers

Recorded Books: <http://www.recordedbooks.com>

Full-Case Audio: <http://www.fullcastaudio.com>

Listening Library: <http://www.listeninglibrary.com>

OverDrive: <http://overdrive.com/>

In addition to these specific sites many book publishers are making audio recordings available. Those are obtainable through the publishing house or through such venues as Amazon.com, BarnesandNobel.com, and Audible.com

Thought Question

What do you need to do to enhance your understanding of the world of audio or other technology assists to help every teen succeed in the world of print?

35. Self-Help Literature

Navigating teenage years is a difficult and confusing process. Teens have questions and face new situations that range from etiquette questions to relationships with friends, family, and the opposite sex. They have concerns about puberty and sexual health. They struggle with identity and finding a place in the world where they are comfortable. While today's teens seem more willing to talk to their parents regarding their questions, there is still a market and a need for materials that answers teens' questions and perhaps provide guidance as teens make their way through the turbulent waters of adolescence.

Originally, etiquette books seemed to be connected to debutantes and the upper class, but they have found their way into the teen market. While some etiquette books still cover topics teens are less likely to participate in, such as fox hunting and croquet, there are others that take a more humorous approach and cover topics such as relationship rules and hygiene. Free Spirit publishing publishes a set of *How Rude!* handbooks that cover rules of family life, dating, friends, and school such as: *The How Rude! Handbook Of School Manners For Teens: Civility In The Hallowed Halls* (2004), *The Teen Girl's Gotta-Have-It Guide to Embarrassing Moments* (2007), and *Talk With Teens About What Matters Most* (2011).

Etiquette books are not the only self-help titles available. There are plenty of advice books for teens that cover family, relationships, sexual health and identity, drugs, and school. Gurl.com has a book for girls—*Deal with It! A Whole Approach to your Body, Brain and Life as a gURL* (1999)—that covers body, sexuality, brain, life, emotions, religion, friends, and family. Mavis Jukes has several titles for girls as well as *The Guy Book, An Owner's Manual* (2002) in which she answers similar questions about life. Another title for boys is *The Teenage Guy's Survival Guide* (1999), which features graphic design and covers the topics common to advice titles. *Boyology: A Teen Girl's Crash Course in All Things Boy* (2009) combines advice with an attractive format to attract the reader's attention. The Girlosophy series cover a wide variety of advice across a wide range of topics. Check out the SOS series—Stressed Out Students Guides—published late 2000s. As one compares the earlier titles with the later ones, format is everything in an attempt to attract the current teen scanner/skimmer.

Puberty presents new issues and questions, and there are several health books that address the changes teens are experiencing physically. The classic *What's Happening to My Body*, 3rd ed. (2007) for boys and girls explain the changes of puberty as well as information on sexual health. Another popular title is *The Teenage Body Book* (2008).

Other self help titles fall more into the psychology area. Some titles deal directly with teen behaviors, such as cutting, eating disorders, and teen depression. Other titles are more inspirational and fall within the realm of the *Chicken Soup for the Soul*-type books, including *Chicken Soup for the Teenage Soul* (I and II) and *Tasteberries* for teens. Popular psychology books for adults often appear in teen versions such as *Seven Habits for Highly Effective Teens* (1998) and sequels, *Knowing Me, Knowing You: The I-Sight Way to Understand Yourself and Others* (2001), and *Who Moved My Cheese? for Teens: An A-Making Way to Change and Win!* (2002), or *The 6 Most Important Decisions You Will Ever Make* (2008). The *Top 20 Teens* (2006) is targeted at teens but provides great advice for “teens” of all ages. Older teens will appreciate the popular *Change the Way You See Everything Through Asset-Based Thinking* (2006).

Self-help titles for teens usually take a humorous approach to answering difficult questions. An excellent example of this is Shaw's *What's That Smell* (2005). While diverse in topic, and occasionally tone, self-help titles are an essential element of any collection for teens.

As with all advice, whether in a printed book or the plethora of websites, and, of course, personal friends, every teen needs to learn to ask the basic questions: “Who is saying what to me, for what reasons, and for what gain?” Advice from spiritual advisors may be quite different than advice in teen magazines, books, or websites. Sources that recommend to teens that they consider advice from a variety of trusted sources before making major life decisions are preferable to sources that give advice freely with a decided bent. For example, who do I believe and take into consideration when trying to decide if I will become sexually active? Parents, spiritual advisors, friends, my boyfriend, a person of the same sex...

Different Formats

Keep options open when providing self-help information to teens. Non-Print sources are also important to keep up with.

Ned's Declassified School Survival Guide follows the lives of Ned, Cookie and Moze and their adventures in James K. Polk Middle School. The show deals with handling academic subjects, as well as social problems such as friends, lockers, projects, and tests. Each episode focuses on one main issue students normally encounter in school while providing tips on how to handle these situations, both comical and serious. In November 2009, the series won the Global Entertainment Award for best kids' programming of the millennium, in a ceremony held in Copenhagen, Denmark. Actors Devon Werkheiser and Lindsey Shaw were there on behalf of the staff to accept the award.

Episodes cost \$1.99 but are of good quality and content. Here is the link to Season One, Ep. 1 "First Day: Lockers": <http://www.amazon.com/First-Day-Lockers>

Core Titles

- Lewis, Barbara A. *The Teen Guide to Global Action*. Free Spirit Press, 2010.
- Bradley, Michael J. *Yes, Your Parents Are Crazy!: A Teen Survival Guide*. Harbor Press, 2004.
- Crist, James J. *Mad: How to Deal With Your Anger and Get Respect*. Free Spirit, 2007.
- Fox, Anne. *Can You Relate? Real World Advice for Teens on Guys, Girls Growing Up and Getting Along*. Free Spirit Publishing, 2000.
- Heugal, Kelly. *GLBTQ (Gay, Lesbian, Bisexual, Transgender, Questioning): The Survival Guide For Queer & Questioning Teens*. Free Spirit Publishing, 2011.
- Hipp, Earl. *Fighting Invisible Tigers: Stress Management for Teens*. Free Spirit, 2008.
- Hyde, Margaret O. *Safe Sex 101: An Overview for Teens*. Twenty-First Century Books, 2006.
- Keel, Philipp. *All About Me Teenage Edition: The Story of Your Life*. Broadway, 2004.
- Lewis, Barbara A. *A Teen Guide to Global Change*. Free Spirit, 2008.
- MacGregor, Marium. *Everyday Leadership*. Free Spirit, 2007.
- Madaras, Lynda. *What's Happening to My Body? Book for Boys: A Growing Up Guide for Parents and Sons*. Newmarket Press, 2007.
- Madaras, Lynda. *What's Happening to My Body? Book for Girls: A Growing Up Guide for Parents and Daughters*. Newmarket Press, 2007.
- Schab, Lisa M. *An Anxiety Workbook for Teens*. Free Spirit, 2008.
- Volkmann, Chris and Toren Volkmann. *From Binge to Blackout: A Mother and Son Struggle with Teen Drinking*. Penguin Group, 2006.

Spotlight: Free Spirit Press

Free Spirit publishers offer a wide range of self-help books for teens. Free Spirit began publishing in 1983 with a mission to bring high-quality materials to help children and teens. Free Spirit focuses on self-help titles including books for learning populations, such as *The Survival Guide for Kids with LD* and *The Gifted Kids' Survival Guide: A Teen Handbook*.

The titles in the Free Spirit catalog include titles for professionals and parents as well as teens. They publish a number of items focusing on character education, behavior disorders, gender issues, and bullying in the classroom as well as titles on school success, test taking, stress, and service learning.

Free Spirit is not the only publisher producing self-help titles for teens, but it has been a leader in the industry. Keep up with all the titles available through Free Spirit by visiting <http://www.freespirit.com/>

Thought Questions

1. What role does the library play in developing teens' lives?
2. What are the issues teens struggle with and how might the library fill an information void?

36. Sports

Historically, sports books have been used to attract males to reading. There was Matt Christopher for younger readers and Thomas J. Dyard for older teenagers. Interest in sports literature has gained many enthusiasts in the United States and Canada in the past decades. Currently the interest has gone beyond the major sports of baseball, football, and basketball. Teen readers have developed an interest in other sports such as golf, rollerblading, skateboarding, soccer, snowboarding, BMX, and others. And females have become part of the target audience.

Mastering the Current Scene

Attracting readers demand books (and authors) who know the vocabulary and who have built a repertoire sufficient to attract the teen into the print world. Those writers who succeed in writing authentic stories/information books on sports topics will certainly attract the attention of avid sports enthusiasts who will revel in the authenticity.

Instilling the idea of sports in print might begin with the magazine shelf in libraries, grocery stores, and bookstores, plus the ESPN networks and sports news broadcasting on television. All are good places to start. *Sports Illustrated* is still the number-one title, but every popular sport from biking to snowboarding has a periodical trying to find space on the commercial shelf. Teens know these sources; ask them for recommendations. Look for ephemeral biographies of sports figures. Use the sports pages of both local and national newspapers as reading materials and parlay the interest into research and reading. Articles will often refer to other sources and to websites with more information.

Next, keep up-to-date on the sports movies that continue to be produced in Hollywood with a few classics such as *Remember the Titans* (2000), *Friday Night Lights* (2004), *The Tao of Pong* (2004), *Grind* (2003), *Million Dollar Baby* (2004), and more recent favorites such as *The Final Season* (2007) and *Forever Strong* (2008). A great list of sports movies can be found at www.filmsite.org/sportsfilms.html

Into the Book World

Beginning in 2011 the YALSA "Best Books for Young Adults List (BBYA)" evolved as the "Best Fiction for Young Adults (BFYA)" list. No sports books appeared on the BFYA 2011 list and few sports books appeared in BBYA lists. In 2009, two titles did appear. Tim Wendel's and Jose Luis Villegas's nonfiction title, *Far From Home: Latino Baseball Players in America* made the list. Matt de la Peña's *Mexican WhiteBoy*, which used baseball as one of the story elements, also appeared. No sports titles appeared on the 2008 or 2006 list. Alan Gratz's *Samurai Shortstop* (2006), a historical sports novel, appeared in 2007. Currently, Chris Crutcher receives much praise from librarians who are interested in good sports-themed literature. There are a number of sub-genres in the sports book world. *Baseball's Greatest Hit: The Story of Take Me Out to the Ball Game* by Robert Thompson, Tim Wiles, and the most enthusiastic baseball fan, Andy Strasberg, will interest even adult readers. Together the three authors share fascinating anecdotes, musical renditions, and many inside tales about the 100-year history of this song first written by Jack Norworth. Younger teens will enjoy the reissue of Fred Bowen's All Star series and five new titles in 2010, including *Throwing Heat*, *Dugout Rivals*, and *Hardcourt Comeback*. Bowen writes fiction with a final chapter explaining the historical element used in the story. Great reads! Find out more about Fred Bowen and his books at www.fredbowen.com, including his illustrated biography of Ted Williams, *No Easy Way*.

Like Fred Bowen, Mike Lupica is a sports columnist. Younger teen readers will relish reading books in his Comeback Kid series. Readers who love sports will enjoy such titles as *Hot Hand*, *Long Shot*, *Safe at Home*, and others, while any player who has been cut from a sports team will identify with the situation in Lupica's *Travel Team*. Lupica's books deal with more than sports. For example, *Safe at Home* is a story of a foster child who loves baseball and readers find that "safe at home" has more than one meaning. Lupica's *The Big Field* explores father and son relationships. *The Batboy* takes on fallen heroes. Mike Lupica's website, www.mikelupicabooks.com, will provide additional information and a video of his appearance in March 2010 on the *Today Show*. And don't forget *The Hunger Games* that has revived interest in archery for girls.

SPORTS – and connections

- Alphin, Elaine Marie. *Perfect Shot*. (2005) — mystery
- Berman, Len *The Greatest Moments in Sports* (2009) — real excitement
- Blumentahal, Karen. *Let Me Play: The Story of Title IX, The Law That Changed the Future of Girls in America*. (2005) — reference
- Brown, Gerry and Michael Morrison. *ESPN Sports Almanac 2009: America's Best-Selling Sports Almanac*. (2008) — reference
- Carroll, Lewis and Christopher Myers. *Jabberwocky*. (2007) — poetry
- Clark, Liz. *One Helluva Ride: How NASCAR Swept the Nation*. (2008) — extreme sports
- Cohen, Sasha and Kathy Goedecken. *Fire on Ice: Autobiography of a Champion Figure Skater*. (2005) — biography
- Cross, Shauna. *Derby Girl*. (2007) — problem novel
- Curlee, Lynn. *Ballpark: The Story of America's Baseball Fields*. (2005) — reference
- Dedijer, Jevto. *Base 66: A Story of Fear, Fun, and Freefall*. (2004) — extreme sports
- Deuker, Carl. *Gym Candy*. (2008); *On the Devil's Court*. (2008 pb) — problem novel
- Deuker, Carl. *Runner*. (2006) — mystery
- Feinstein, John. *Last Shot: A Final Four Mystery* (Final Four Mysteries). (2005) — mystery
- Ferruggia, Jason. *Fit to Fight: An Insanely Effective Strength and Conditioning Program for the Ultimate MMA Warrior*. (2008) — extreme sports
- Gibson, Bob, and Reggie Jackson and Lonnie Wheeler. *Sixty Feet, Six Inches: A Hall of Fame Hitter & A Hall of Fame Pitcher Talk About How the Game is Played*. (2011) — biography/information
- Grange, Michael *Basketball's Greatest Stars*. (2010) — quick bios
- Grisham, John. *Playing for Pizza: A Novel*. (2007; adult) — mystery
- Gutman, Dan. *Roberto & Me*. (Baseball Card Adventures) (2010) — mystery
- Hawk, Tony, and Sean Mortimer. *Tony Hawk: Professional Skateboarder*. (2002) — extreme sports
- Heisuer, John. *100 Things Notre Dame Fans Should Know and Do Before They Die*. (2009)
- King, Stephen. *Blockade Billy*. (2010) — macabre
- Larsen, Christopher E. *Paintball and Airsoft Battle Tactics*. (2008) — extreme sports
- Mackey, Weezie Kerr. *Throwing Like a Girl*. (2007) — problem novel
- McKissack, Fredrick, Jr. *Shooting Star*. (2009) — problem novel
- Morrison, Lillian. *Way to Go! Sports Poems*. (2007) — poetry
- Murdock, Catherine Gilbert. *Dairy Queen*. (2006) — problem novel
- Myers, Walter Dean. *Slam!* (2008) — Basketball and life
- Parker, Robert B. *Edenville Owls*. (2007) — mystery
- Radcliffe, Paula. *How to Run: All You Need to Know About Fun Runs, Marathons and Everything in Between*. (2011) — information
- Reed, Rob. *The Way of the Snowboarder*. (2005) — extreme sports
- Rhodes, Dusty with Howard Brody. *Dusty: Reflections of an American Dream*. (2006) — biography
- Ripslinger, Jon. *How I Fell in Love and Learned to Shoot Free Throws*. (2003) — romance
- Sheen, Barbara. *Danica Patrick*. (People in the News) (2009) — biography
- Smith, Charles R., Jr. *Short Takes: Fast-Break Basketball Poetry*. (2001); *Hoop Kings*. (2004; 2007 pb); *Hoop Queens*. (2003; 2007 pb) — poetry
- Smith, Roland. *Peak*. (2007) — problem novel
- Sports Illustrated editors. *Sports Illustrated: Almanac 2010*. (2009) — reference
- Sports Illustrated editors. *Sports Illustrated: The Football Book Expanded Edition*. (2009) — reference
- Takehiko, Inoue. *Slam Dunk, Volume 5*. (2009, Manga) — problem novel
- Todd, Anne M. *Venus and Serena Williams*. (Women of Achievement) (2009) — biography
- Van Draanen, Wendelin. *The Running Dream*. (2012) — Disabled sports fiction

- Vincent, Fay. *It's What's Inside the Lines That Counts: Baseball Stars of the 1970s and 1980s Talk About the Game They Loved*. (2011) — information
- Zusak, Markus. *Getting the Girl*. (2003) — romance

Selected Magazines for All Sports

Golf.Com (up-to-date news of the golf world) at www.golf.com

National Geography Adventure (Adventure and sports) www.nationalgeographic.com/adventure/

Sporting News www.sportingnews.com

Sports Illustrated www.si.com

Tennis Magazine

Websites for More Sports Books

Carnegie Library of Pittsburgh: <http://www.carnegielibrary.org/teens/books/sports.cfm>

San Francisco Public Library: (sports fiction) http://sfpl.org/teensite/?page_id=215

(sports non-fiction) http://sfpl.org/teensite/?page_id=219

Spotlight: John H. Ritter

John H. Ritter grew up in the hills of San Diego where he spent many days playing “one-on-one” baseball with his brothers. His family was a “baseball family” but they also enjoyed music, poems, and mathematics. His father was a sports editor for the *San Diego Union*. Ritter was only four when his mother died and his father moved the family to a rural area near the Mexican border. It was in those rural hills that Ritter began to imagine baseball games—to finish the action he and his brothers started. Those imaginary games entered into his writing life as he wrote *Choosing Up Sides* (1998) and told the story of Luke Bledsoe who is torn between his religion’s demand for him to use his right hand and his success as a baseball player using his left hand. Ritter’s success as a writer enabled him to leave his 25-year career as a house painter behind and to become a full-time writer. More sports books followed: *Over the Wall* (2000), *The Boy Who Saved Baseball* (2003), and *Under the Baseball Moon* (2006).

One of his most recent books, *The Desperado Who Stole Baseball* (2009), brings sports to the Old West. In a rollicking narrative, Ritter reveals the secret behind Dillontown and Cruz de la Cruz. Who is Cruz and what does Billy the Kid have to do with all of this? A Junior Library Guild Selection.

Learn more about Ritter at: <http://www.johnhritter.com>

Keeping Up

Websites to keep one up-to-date on the latest sports happenings.

- *Sports Links*: <http://www.facebook.com/pages/Sports-Links-Centralcom/125258939112>
- *Sports*: <http://www.sports-reference.com/>

Thought Questions

- 1) Should a collection of young adult literature include books about sports heroes that are destined to be short-lived? Why or why not?
- 2) Defend this comment: Young adults are often more interested in books that talk about the sport rather than fiction titles about the sport. What evidence can you cite to support your position?

37. Adventure and Nature

Early classic tales such as *Black Beauty* by Anne Sewell (1877) and *Call of the Wild* (1903) by Jack London were basically animal and survival stories told from the animal's perspective. The “boy and his dog” genre was popularized by Fred Gipson's *Old Yeller* (1957). Soon there followed: boy and his falcon, boy and his bear, and of course, boy and his horse. The popularity of such stories grew. Books in any genre, with female protagonists, were often lacking in action so animal/adventure tales attracted female readers who wanted to read interesting adventurous tales—although most human characters were still male. Lynn Hall contributed “girl and her horse” stories—and they became very popular—while Marguerite Henry's titles, *King of the Wind*, *Misty of Chincoteague* (and others), were characterized by the historical events that were the basis for many of her stories.

The Western genre that began with James Fenimore Cooper, Owen Wister, and Cormac McCarthy evolved in the 1950s (thanks in part to the movie hero John Wayne) into popular reading fare. Fueled by the novels of Louis L'Amour, the romance of the West and the American cowboy became popular topics. Largely written for an adult audience, young adults sought the adventure that they held.

When publishers began to recognize the young adult audience, success came with the survival novel. Teen readers relished the idea of being independent and self-reliant and being able to survive on their own without the help of (or interference from) adults. Building on the success with *My Side of the Mountain* (1959), a Newbery honor book, Jean Craighead George wrote *Julie of the Wolves* (1972) while Gary Paulsen found his own phenomenal success with *Hatchet* (1987) and dozens of other adventure/outdoor tales. As writers have begun to look for ways to tell stories, survival and adventure have mixed with fantasy—*Airborn* by Kenneth Oppel (2004)—or set in a post-apocalyptic environment—*Tomorrow* series by John Marsden or *Peak* by Ronald Smith (2007). The 2007 Broken Key trilogy by Brian S. Pratt that includes *Shepherd's Quest*, *Hunter of the Horde*, and *Quest's End* is a touchstone example of a fantasy adventure series for young adult readers. Elements of the Western genre are often incorporated into other types of stories. A recent example includes John H. Ritter who mixed the appeal of a Western with a 2009 sports book, *The Desperado Who Stole Baseball*.

Recently, true stories of survival and adventure gained in appeal to teens with wanderlust or just for a taste of real courage. From the classic retelling of Heinrich Harrer's *Seven Years in Tibet* (1952; 1997) to the quest onto the highest Himalayan peaks in Peter Matthiessen's *The Snow Leopard* (2008), these tales will stop the heart from beating. Historical survival tales include Slavonmi Rawicz's account, *The Long Walk: The True Story of a Trek to Freedom* (2006), of a Polish prisoner of war who escapes from the Red Army in 1939 and flees 200 miles on foot to safety. Described as a romantic adventure, Maggie Stiefvater's *The Scorpio Races* (2011) appeals to both male and female readers as it includes adventure, excitement of survival, intrigue, and a touch of romance.

Adventure of Another Kind

Sometimes an adventure goes astray, and that is what happened when Greg Mortenson, an American nurse, attempted to climb the world's second tallest mountain (K2). He returned from the mountain and his failed attempt, seriously ill for seven weeks. Pakistani villagers nursed him back to health. *Three Cups of Tea: One Man's Mission to Promote Peace . . . One School at a Time* (2006) is Mortenson's tale of his return to health and his promise to the Pakistanis who helped him. In Mortenson's account readers meet many people. This book is a good read for its inspirational value and the adventure—not necessarily for its literary value. It is captivating and full of suspense and adventure.

Adventure, Survival, and Environmental Episodes

Allende, Isabel. *City of the Beasts*. (2002)—On the hunt for a “beast” in the Amazon the supernatural and the natural cross over. Fiction

Armstrong, Jennifer. *Shipwreck at the Bottom of the World*. (1998)—Details Shackelton's Antarctic expedition. Non-fiction

- Bauer, Joan. *Backwater*. (1999; 2005) — Ivy is "different" and she thinks her long-absent aunt (a hermit in the mountains) holds the secret to her own differentness. A trip deep into the Adirondacks brings danger and face-to-face encounters with her own fears. Fiction
- Cowley, Joy. *Hunter*. (2003) — A plane crash survivor alone on a deserted island shares visions with a Maori boy living in the early 1800s. Fiction
- Goldsmith, Connie. *Lost in the Desert: The True Story of Four Families in California's Gold Rush*. (2004) — Lesser known than the Donner Party, this tells the story of a group crossing Death Valley in 1849. Non-fiction
- Hobbs, Will. *Leaving Protection*. (2004) — Robbie manages to get his dream job on a salmon fishing troller, but the dream soon turns dark when he discovers the captain's secret. Fiction
- Hobbs, Will. *Crossing the Wire*. (2006) — Fifteen-year-old Victor must deal with ruthless drug traffickers as he strives to cross the border, survives in the north, and provide for his fatherless family. Hobbs's *Far North* (1996) is a classic survival tale. Fiction
- Junger, Sebastian. *The Perfect Storm*. (1997) — In 1991, the Andrea Gail was caught in the "perfect storm" and lost at sea. Non-fiction
- Key, Watt. *Dirt Road Home*. (2010) — The Hellenweiler Boy's Home is not what authorities think it is and Hal finds it difficult to stay out of trouble. Fiction.
- Krakauer, Jon. *Into Thin Air: A Personal Account of the Everest Disaster*. (1997) — The story of the ill-fated climb to the top of Everest. Non-fiction
- Malnor, Carol and Bruce Malnor. *Earth Heroes: Champions of the Wilderness*. (2009) — Eight environmentalists face dangers and struggles to protect the environment. Fiction
- Martel, Yann. *The Life of Pi*. (2002) — A young man is caught on a life raft with a tiger. Fiction
- Mikaelsen, Ben. *Tree Girl*. (2004) — Based on survivor's accounts of the 1980s Guatemalan civil war. Gabriela Flores tells of her own survival and its aftermath. Non-fiction
- Neale, Jonathon. *Himalaya*. (2003) — Alternating chapters detail a mountain climbing expedition. Fiction
- Northrop, Michael. *Trapped*. (2011) — At first being snowed in at school was an adventure; but then the days and the snow keep piling up. The trapped teens face a desperate decision. Fiction.
- Niven, Jennifer. *Ada Blackjack: A True Story of Survival in the Arctic*. (2003) — Non-fiction
- Paulsen, Gary. *Hatchet* (1987); *The River* (1991); *Brian's Winter* (1996); *Brian's Return* (1999); and *Brian's Hunt* (2003) — Brian survives a plane crash, in a river, with only his hatchet and fortitude. Sequels explore similar adventures/survival episodes. Fiction
- Ralston, Aron. *Between a Rock and a Hard Place*. (2004) — After a climbing accident leaves him pinned, he must make a gruesome sacrifice. Non-fiction
- Read, Piers Paul. *Alive: The Story of Andes Survivors*. (1974; 2005) — A team of rugby players crashed in the remote snowy peaks of the Andes (1972). Ten weeks later, only sixteen of the forty-five passengers were found alive. This is the story of those ten weeks. Non-fiction
- Smith, Roland. *Elephant Run*. (2008) — An environmental mystery adventure tale. Fiction
- Torrey, Michele. *Voyage of Ice: Chronicles of Courage*. (2004) — In the 1850s two teens find work on a whaling ship. Fiction
- Weaver, Will. *Memory Boy*. (2001) — Miles and his family begin a new life in the wilderness after a cataclysmic volcanic eruption. Fiction
- White, Robb. *Deathwatch*. (1972) — Stranded in the desert and being hunted by a man with a rifle, Ben fights to stay alive. Fiction

Suggestions for the Near Adult Reader

Visit NileGuide: Top 50 Adventure Books of All Time at blog.nileguide.com/2009/01/21/top-50-adventure-books-of-all-time/

Two Real Life Adventure Stories — Not to be missed:

A Long Walk to Water: Based on a True Story by Linda Sue Park (2010). Two lives—two parallel stories: Nya whose story (2008-09), in southern Sudan, is consumed by the daily trek for water, and Salva whose life is consumed by a more brutal quest for survival (1985-2009). An afterward by Salva Dut heightens the impact of this real life adventure and what comes after.

War Games: Based on a True Story of World War II by Audrey Coulombis and Akila Coulombis (2009). Inspired by Akila's family's experiences in Greece when the Nazis invade and a German commander takes up residence in the family's home. The family's ties to America and a cousin who has escaped the Gestapo, and who is hiding in a cistern at the family's home, contribute to the heart-stopping adventure/suspense.

□

Spotlight: Roland Smith

Roland Smith, at age five, received an old typewriter from his parents and his writing career began. When Smith was grown he impressed the zookeepers at the children's zoo where he worked with his ability to find and catch escaped animals and birds. He decided that some of his experiences might make good books. His earlier books included informational books about animals in the zoo: whales, dolphins, porpoises, big cats, snakes, primates, elephants, and other animals. *Thunder Cave* (1995), *Jaguar* (1997), and *Sasquatch* (1998) became very popular adventure stories. *The Last Lobo* (1999) was the last of Jacob Lansa's thrilling action-filled environmental adventures. Other books infused fast-paced adventure with drug trafficking (*Zach's Lie*, 2001) and its sequel (*Jack's Run*, 2005), anthropology (*Cryptid Hunter*, 2005), a quest to be the youngest person to reach the Everest summit (*Peak*, 2007), and World War II (*Elephant Run*, 2008). *Independence Hall* (2008), the first book of his *I. Q.* series, features Q (Quest) whose father marries 16-year-old Angela's mother. Adventure, suspense, humor, fascinating characters, magic, spy games, and martial arts follow. *The White House* (2009) and *Kitty Hawk* (2012) are other titles in the *I. Q.* series.

Check out the author's website at www.rolandsmith.com and *Legwork* (2011) available only as an e-book.

As with many other genres there seems to be an infusion of one genre with another. A recent western title, *Dead Reckoning* (2012) by Mercedes Lackey and Rosemary Edghill, mixes the excitement of the old west—gun slinging, hair-raising adventure—with a zombie smash-up: a zombie western.

Sandra Mitchell successfully mixes romance with life on the Oklahoma prairie in *The Springsweet* (2012). The chief protagonist, Zora Steward, is described as a wounded heroine who rediscovers the strength she thought she'd lost.

Readers who are serious about reading Western genre books should not miss the classic titles by Louis L'Amour, John Jakes, and Zane Grey.

Newer Western Titles for Teens

- *Sacajawea* by Joseph Bruchac (2000)
- *Spanish Jack: A Novel of the Real People* by Jack Conley (2001)
- *Cowboy Ghost* by Robert Newton Peck (2001)
- *Stop the Train!* by Geraldine McCaughrean (2003)
- *Twelve Travelers, Twenty Horses* by Harriette Gillem Robinet (2003)
- *Blood Gold* by Michael Cadnum (2004)
- *Black Storm Comin'* by Diane Lee Wilson (2005)
- *The Misadventures of Maude Marche: Or Trouble Rides a Fast Horse* (2005) and *Maude Marche on the Run* by Audrey Coulombis (2007)
- *Cowboy Stories* collected and illustrated by Barry Moser (2007)
- *Adventurous Deeds of Deadwood Jones* by Helen Hemphill (2008)
- *I Witness: Hard Gold: The Colorado Gold Rush of 1859: A Tale of the Old West* by Avi (2008)
- *Bull Rider* by Suzanne Morgan Williams (2009)

□

Thought Questions

- 1) What role does the outdoor adventure and survival novel play in today's increasingly developed world?
- 2) *Three Cups of Tea* was originally categorized as a memoir—supposedly an accurate account of someone's experience based on his or her memories of events. Eventually a controversy arose about the accuracy of Greg Mortenson's account. Read "'Three Cups of Tea' Author Defends Book" in the April 11, 2011 post in the New York Times <http://tinyurl.com/d889vgs> then discuss: memoir or fiction?

38. History and Historical Fiction

History is a story well told. Few (if any) history textbooks can compete with the stories of individuals that are connected emotionally with historical events. Today's selection of books includes an enormous amount of historical material leaving little excuse for lack of interest (or knowledge) by teens. The publishing world offers much to young adult readers.

Events

Specific events comprise the totality of history. Several authors zero in on significant events that shaped part of the historical landscape. Some powerful examples include:

- Susan Campbell Bartoletti's *Black Potatoes: The Story of the Great Irish Famine, 1845–1850* (2001) and *Hitler Youth: Growing Up in Hitler's Shadow* (2005);
- Russell Freedman's *Lafayette and the American Revolution* (2010);
- Catherine Gourley's *The Horrors of Andersonville: Life and Death Inside a Civil War Prison* (2010);
- Gail Jarrow's *Lincoln's Flying Spies: Thaddeus Lowe and the Civil War Balloon Corps* (2010); and
- Marc Aronson's and Marina Budhos's *Sugar Changed the World: A Story of Magic, Spice, Slavery, Freedom and Science* (2011).

Time Periods

Teens are often required to research the life and times of peoples or countries. *Cartographies of Time: A History of the Timeline* by Anthony Grafton and Daniel Rosenberg (2010) crafts a lively history in their comprehensive history of graphic representations of time in Europe and the United States from 1450 to the present. Searching the Library of Congress site (www.loc.gov) and its American Memory section will yield more titles and suggestions for studying the decades.

Places

Atlases provide graphical representations of events that can help visualize geographic settings over a period of time. Derek Hayes and the University of California Press have worked together to publish several extraordinary historical atlases for regions in the United States and Canada. Representative titles include: *Historical Atlas of the United States* (2006), *Historical Atlas of the American West* (2009), and *America Discovered: A Historical Atlas of North American Exploration* (2009). Hayes's titles are noted for their comprehensive maps and the expansive text that provides information about the importance of maps in the history of the area being examined.

Revisionist History

While many authors write sympathetic histories, usually of recent events, other authors create quite different interpretations of what really happened. For example, many Revolutionary War histories ignored the contribution of African Americans in the conflict. Clinton Cox adds information others have left out—information about 5,000 plus Black soldiers in the American Revolution, in *Come All You Brave Soldiers: Blacks In The Revolutionary War* (1999). Catherine Adams and Elizabeth H. Pleck focuses on the unique circumstances that faced Black women in *Love of Freedom: Black Women in Colonial and Revolutionary New England* (2010).

Primary Sources

Current research practices have put a new emphasis on the use of primary sources in addition to secondary sources—the best resource for primary sources is the Library of Congress' American Memory Collection. (Online at memory.loc.gov)

Oral History Recorded in Print

History is not just an account of happenings in far-away places and people, but also of places and people next door. Local history can be preserved after interviewing, filming, and recording events and stories from members of the neighborhood. Teens might interview a World War II hero, the oldest mayor in town, grandparents, or even teen sports stars. Such experiences can lead to a fascination with

both history and biography. Peter Hoehnic compiled a history of his community (Amana, Iowa) in *Amana People: History of a Religious Community* (2003). This book can serve as a model for parlaying factual information into a readable local history narrative.

Don't Forget Historical Fiction

Thanks to wonderful teen book authors, literally any historical time period can be brought to life with fictional stories. The line between history and historical fiction is blurred because so many authors use narrative in both fiction and information titles. Interest in historical fiction has increased dramatically in the last decades due to such authors as Avi (*The True Confessions of Charlotte Doyle* [1990]), Karen Cushman (*The Midwife's Apprentice* [1995]), Richard Peck (*The River Between Us* [2003]), Christopher Paul Curtis (*The Watsons Go To Birmingham—1963* [1995]), Laurie Halse Anderson (*Chains* [2008]), and Audrey Couloubis (*War Games* [2009]). These books provide a bridge from the world of fiction to the world of real history. For more information about the genre of historical fiction read "Getting It Right: Historical Fiction or Not?" by Sharron L. McElmeel. *Library Media Connection*, Jan/Feb 2009, Vol. 27 Issue 4, p40-41.

History in Film

Numerous filmmakers try to document historical events or persons either loosely constructed on the facts or in some form of documentary. These films can spark conversation and further exploration as teens view the films. Some examples include Michael Moore's *Fahrenheit 9/11* (an exposé on George W. Bush), *Thirteen Days* (the Cuban Missile Crisis), *Apollo 13* (a dramatic retelling of disaster), *Schindler's List* (concentration camps of WWII), *Titanic*, *Seabiscuit* (Depression era), *The Patriot* (Revolutionary War), *The Aviator*, *Cinderella Man*, and *The Help* (Mississippi and Civil Rights).

Other Readable Histories

- Beah, Ishmael. *A Long Way Gone: Memoirs of a Boy Soldier*. (2008)
- Coventry, Susan. *The Queen's Daughter*. (2010)
- Beah, Ishmael. *A Long Way Gone: Memoirs of a Boy Soldier*. (2008)
- Coventry, Susan. *The Queen's Daughter*. (2010)
- Giblin, James Cross. *The Many Rides of Paul Revere*. (2007)
- Klein, Lisa M. *Cate of the Lost Colony*. (2010)
- Lawton, Clive A. *Auschwitz: The Story of a Nazi Death Camp*. (2002)
- Murphy, Jim. *An American Plague: The True and Terrifying Story of the Yellow Fever*. (2003)
- O'Connor, Jane. *The Emperor's Silent Army: Terracotta Warriors of Ancient China*. (2002)
- Park, Linda Sue. *A Long Walk to Water: Based on a True Story*. (2010)
- Sis. Peter. *The Wall: Growing Up Behind the Iron Curtain*. (2007)

Spotlight: Local History Photographed

In a variation on collecting only historical narratives, in 1984 Peter Feldstein photographed residents of a small town; twenty years later he photographed them again. Feldstein's photographs showed the passage of time while Feldstein's friend, Stephen G. Bloom, helped to mold the residents' words into a personal and collective history. Their book, *The Oxford Project* (2008), was named a 2009 Alex Award book and was included on many best book lists.

Thought Questions

- 1) What historical events captured in film represent the best and most authentic retelling of history?
- 2) How can a single historical fiction novel lead the way to a fascinating exploration of the time or period presented?
- 3) What historical museums are in your local area that teens could benefit from visiting?

39. Biography

Biographies allow young adults to explore the lives of other people and experience a slice of the time period, often historical, in which the subject lived. An account of a person's life, whether written by someone other than the subject (biography) or by the subject him- or herself (autobiography) provides the reader with a view into another time period or culture. The setting in any biography must be historically accurate, but the focus must remain on its subject and the people who influenced him or her.

Traditionally, biographies were most often written about hero types who were intended to be models for the type of life young readers should live. Even if the subject was not entirely moral and worthy of emulation, the biography focused only on the positive traits. Jean Fritz became one of the first biographers for young readers to include some of the frailties of her subjects. Presently the standards for the biographies require a balanced profile of the subject, showing both their strengths and their weaknesses. James Cross Giblin does that remarkably well in *Good Brother, Bad Brother: The Story of Edwin Booth and John Wilkes Booth* (2005). Giblin manages to keep the focus on the Booth Brothers and their compelling theatrical presence. But the solid research also shows John Wilkes as a man consumed with his love for the Confederacy and the plots he and his colleagues hatched to kidnap Lincoln. It portrays John as a man who is impulsive and his brother as an actor whose accomplishments were always in the shadow of his brother's role in assassinating President Lincoln.

Subjects for biographies generally fit into three basic categories:

- Historically/culturally significant
- Contemporarily significant
- Ordinary people with extraordinary stories.

Many biographies are written about well-known figures whose influence and accomplishments will endure through generations. The biographies about them would be considered historically and culturally significant. Examples include:

- *The Great and Only Barnum: The Tremendous, Stupendous Life of Showman P.T. Barnum* by Candace Fleming (2009) — A brilliant account of the amazing and thrilling life of the great P.T. Barnum, the father of the American circus.
- *Charles and Emma: The Darwins' Leap of Faith* by Deborah Heiligman (2009) — A lively biography of the Darwins' family life of one of the world's most famous scientists.

A second category of subjects includes those that are significant in the current culture or political scene — contemporarily significant. The major claim to fame by these subjects is their present popularity or notoriety. Some retain a relatively small amount of significance but others are considered “flashes in the pan.” Barbara Bush, the First Lady during George Bush's presidency, was the subject of Arleen McGrath Heiss's *Barbara Bush* (1992). Interest in her has waned and the book is now out-of-print. She will be included in collective biographies of presidential wives so she cannot be legitimately considered a “flash in the pan.” Books such as *Hilary Duff: A Not-So-Typical Teen* by Nancy Krulik (2004), *Christina Aguilera: A Star is Made: The Unauthorized Biography* by Pier Dominguez (2002), or *John Lennon: All I Want is the Truth* by Elizabeth Partridge (2005) are books whose subjects may or may not be short-lived depending on their overall contribution to society in general. Once the subjects' popularity wanes, so too will the interest in the presently popular figure.

Increasingly biographies are being written about ordinary people with extraordinary stories. Phillip M. Hoose wrote about Claudette Colvin, a young teen who sparked the Montgomery Bus Boycott (and Rosa Parks actions), in *Claudette Colvin: Twice Towards Justice* (2009). The diary of nineteen-year-old Thura al-Windawi records her account of the war in Iraq in *Thura's Diary* (2004). Adeline Yen Mah, a successful physician, writes about her childhood and struggles to rise above her family's perception of her as being “bad luck” after her mother dies giving birth to her. *Chinese Cinderella: The True Story of an Unwanted Daughter* (2001) puts a personal face on the struggle to rise above the cultural mores present in the Chinese culture in the 1940s. Claudette Colvin, Thura al-Windawi, and Adeline Yen Mah are ordinary people, but their stories are riveting tales with a unique perspective on a culture/period of time that many have only facts and outsider observations available.

Biographies/autobiographies regardless of the subject are generally of two types:

- *Event Account*— focuses on a historically or culturally significant event in a subject’s life. Russell Freedman’s *Lincoln: A Photobiography* (1987) focuses on Lincoln’s presidency while providing functional information about Lincoln’s life. Tanya Lee Stone’s collective biography, *Almost Astronauts: 15 Women Who Dared to Dream* (2009) focuses in on one period of the lives of 13 women who aspired to be among the first in space.
- *Life Account*— a birth to death (or birth to present) account of the subject’s life. In Daniel Tammet’s autobiography, *Born on a Blue Day: A Memoir Inside the Extraordinary Mind of an Autistic Savant* (2007), we learn of an extraordinary 27-year-old with an extraordinary mind and intriguing life.

Some teens are ready for the world of adult biography with its friendly, adversarial or reassessment of people in their times and places. It is difficult to find a better biography than David McCullough’s *John Adams*, *Truman*, or *Mornings on Horseback: The Story of an Extraordinary Family, A Vanished Way of Life and the Unique Child Who Became Theodore Roosevelt* (2001). Advanced teen readers will enjoy the magnificent writing and a picture of time, place, and personality that is unique to these complete and intriguing biographies.

Checklist for Evaluating Biographies and Biography Collections

- ❑ Language or dialect must be consistent with the time and place.
- ❑ Realistic and balanced approach— recognize warts and all.
- ❑ Equal representation in collections— Ratio of minorities in the collection and a representation of both male and female should be appropriate.
- ❑ Facts and details accurate.
- ❑ Facts and storyline are seamlessly presented.
- ❑ Source material acknowledged.
- ❑ Characters accurately portrayed without stereotypes.
- ❑ Writing is readable and interesting.

Other Significant Biographers:

- Russell Freedman
- James Cross Giblin
- Patricia and Fredrick McKissack
- Milton Meltzer

The Winter Park Florida Public Library has a list of links to many categories of biographies/autobiographies – Check out the links at <http://tinyurl.com/cpmxw2k>

Spotlight: Candace Fleming

On her website, www.candacefleming.com, Candace Fleming tells us that she became interested in writing and history in her elementary school days. She says, “History is really just an extension of my love of stories. After all, some of the best stories are true ones— tales of heroism and villainy made more incredible by the fact they really happened.” Her biographies have set a new benchmark for the genre. She combines facsimiles of tickets, posters, ledgers and other primary source material with solid research to compile stunning and incredibly interesting scrapbook accounts of her subjects: *Ben Franklin's Almanac: Being a True Account of the Good Gentleman's Life* (2003); *Our Eleanor: A Scrapbook Look at Eleanor Roosevelt's Remarkable Life* (2005); *Lincolns: A Scrapbook Look at Abraham and Mary* (2008); *The Great and Only Barnum: The Tremendous, Stupendous Life of Showman P.T. Barnum* (2009); and *Amelia Lost: The Life and Disappearance of Amelia Earhart* (2011) .

Thought Questions

- 1) How can biographies contribute to the knowledge of a historical period of time?
- 2) Are biographies superior to or equal to historical fiction about the same person? How do the genres compare?
- 3) Can we consider memoirs to be biographies? Investigate and explain why or why not

More Biographies (In addition to the titles included in the preceding narrative try these biographies, autobiographies, and collective biographies)

- Adler, David. *Frederick Douglass: A Noble Life*. (2010)
- Andreason, Don. *River Boy: The Story of Mark Twain*. (2003)
- Angel, Ann. *Janis Joplin*. (2010) – 2011 YALSA Award for Excellence in Nonfiction for Young Adults.
- Beah, Ishmael. *A Long Way Gone: Memoirs of a Boy Soldier*. (2007)
- Belth, Alex. *Stepping Up: The Story of Mark Twain*. (2006)
- Bolden, Tonya. *Maritcha: A Nineteenth Century American Girl*. (2005)
- Caravanes, Peggy. *Petticoat Spies: Six Women Spies of the Civil War*. (2002)
- Chen, Da. *China's Son: Growing Up in the Cultural Revolution*. (2003)
- Colman, Penny. *Elizabeth Cady Stanton and Susan B. Anthony: A Friendship That Changed the World*. (2011)
- Cyrus, Miley, and Hilary Liftin. *Miley Cyrus: Miles to Go*. (2009)
- Edelson, Edward. *Gregor Mendel: And the Roots of Genetics*. (2001)
- Fleischman, John. *Phineas Gage: A Gruesome But True Story About Brain Science*. (2002)
- Fleischmann, Sid. *Sir Charlie: Chaplin, The Funniest Man in the World*. (2010)
- Fradin, Judith Bloom and Dennis B. Fradin. *5,000 Miles to Freedom: Ellen and William Craft's Flight From Slavery*. (2006)
- Giblin, James Cross. *Life and Death of Adolf Hitler*. (2002)
- Giblin, James Cross. *The Rise and Fall of Senator Joe McCarthy*. (2009)
- Goldberg, Enid A., and Norman Itzkowitz. *Vlad the Impaler: The Real Count Dracula*. (2008)
- Greenberg, Jan. *Vincent Van Gogh: Portrait of an Artist*. (2003)
- Harness, Cheryl. *Rabble Rousers: 20 Women Who Made a Difference*. (2003)
- Heiligman, Deborah. *Charles and Emma: The Darwins' Leap of Faith*. (2008)
- Helfer, Andrew. *Malcolm X: A Graphic Biography*. (2006)
- Jocelyn, Marthe. *Scribbling Women: True Tales From Astonishing Lives*. (2011)
- Kirkpatrick, Katherine. *The Snow Baby*. (2006)
- Kamkwamba, William and Bryan Mealer. *The Boy Who Harnessed the Wind: Creating Currents of Electricity and Hope*. (2010)
- Lasky, Kathryn. *A Voice of Her Own: The Story of Phillis Wheatley, Slave Poet*. (2003)
- Lipsyte, Robert. *Heroes of Baseball: The Men Who Made it America's Favorite Game*. (2006)
- Lutes, Jason. *Houdini: The Handcuff King*. (2007)
- Murphy, Jim. *The Real Benedict Arnold*. (2007)
- Oppenheim, Joanne. *Dear Miss Breed: True Stories of the Japanese American Incarceration During World War II and A Librarian Who Made A Difference*. (2006)
- Reef, Catherine. *e.e. cummings: a poet's life*. (2006)
- Robinson, Sharon. *Promises to Keep: How Jackie Robinson Changed America*. (2004)
- Rubin, Susan Goldman. *Searching for Anne Frank: Letters from Amsterdam to Iowa*. (2003); *Music Was IT: Young Leonard Bernstein*. (2011)
- Sheinkin, Steve. *The Notorious Benedict Arnold: A True Story of Adventure, Heroics, & Treachery*. (2011)
- Sinnott, Susan. *Extraordinary Asian Americans and Pacific Islanders*. (2003)
- Small, David. *Stitches: A Memoir*. (2009)
- Spitz, Bob. *Yeab! Yeab! Yeab!: The Beatles, Beatlemania, and the Music That Changed the World*. (2007)
- Thomas, Garen. *Yes We Can: A Biography of President Barack Obama*. (2009)
- Wooldridge, Connie. *The Brave Escape of Edith Wharton: A Biography*. (2010)
- Zenatti, Valérie. *When I Was A Soldier: A Memoir*. (2005)

40. Real Science and Technology

In elementary school libraries, books about animals are prevalent as are topics such as dinosaurs and picture books on space, rockets, and other amazing phenomenon. Somewhere between childhood and the teenage years, interest in science seems to wane. Difficulty in building any science or technology collection and promoting it to teens is partially the result of the speed at which volumes and websites go out of date. Couple that with the new discoveries and scientific theories that crumble almost yearly, and we know we must evaluate carefully the material we offer young adult readers. Despite those factors, science teachers interested in extending student learning beyond the textbook will find many possibilities. For example, a biology teacher who introduces his/her students to Nancy Werlin's *Double Helix* will find students often develop a renewed interest in genetic engineering. Consider the following categories in which to find titles of interest to teens:

- The way things work
- Lavishly illustrated books of space or the micro worlds under a microscope
- Computer graphics and special effects in movies
- Books of the ocean depths
- Natural disasters such as volcano eruptions, earthquakes, or tornadoes
- Reference books on diseases that affect teenagers such as AIDS, addictions, or depression
- Career resources in science and technology
- Interactive science experiments going on in real time by National Geographic or others
- Materials for Science Fair competitions

Perhaps the best materials to promote to teenagers are the fabulous websites created by science laboratories. Many of these sites provide reports and science news that teens can use. They are wonderful resources for data and include lavish photographs that could enhance research reports.

Many teens are involved in science fairs and require information far beyond what could be contained in a school or public library. In this case, teachers and librarians should develop links to sophisticated scientific databases accessible available through colleges, universities and science labs. These organizations are usually quite willing to help budding science investigators. One is reminded of such help in the book, *Rocket Boys* by Homer Hickam and its companion movie *October Sky*, when a teenager corresponds with Werner von Braun about the construction of rocket nozzles. Today, many scientists are willing to mentor young people via email.

It is quite possible to stimulate the interest of teens in space as they view *Apollo 15* and recognize both the challenge and the drama that has played out in many scientific discoveries and technological experiments. Teens are also easily interested in scientific controversies, i.e. cloning, stem cell research, or creationism vs. intelligent design. When teens become involved in actual experiments, such as participatory data collection of the local environment, these teens will be seeking information of all types as they discover careers and interests for themselves. Teachers and librarians who know good search techniques and resources will find an audience of eager-seeking friends.

Check out these favorites:

- Barretta, Gene. *Neo Leo: The Ageless Ideas of Leonardo da Vinci*. (2009)
- Carter, Rita. *The Human Brain Book: An Illustrated Guide to its Structure, Function, and Disorders*. (2009)
- Cassino, Mark. *The Story of Snow: The Science of Winter's Wonder*. (2009)
- Cox, Caroline. *The Fight to Survive: A Young Girl, Diabetes, and the Discovery of Insulin*. (2009)
- Dunphy, Madeleine. *At Home with the Gopher Tortoise*. (2010)
- Hughes, Susan. *Case Closed?* (2010)
- Kean, Sam. *The Disappearing Spoon: And Other True Tales of Madness, Love and the History of the World from the Periodic Table of Elements*. (2010)
- Mortensen, Lori. *Come See the Earth Turn*. (2010)
- Montgomery, Syd. *Saving the Ghost of the Mountains: An Expedition Among Snow Leopards in Mongolia*. (2009)
- Novian, Claire. *The Deep: The Extraordinary Creatures of the Abyss*. (2007)
- Reed, Jim. *Storm Chaser: A Photographer's Journey*. (2007)

Keeping Up

- The periodical *Appraisal: Science Books for Young People* provides reviews from two perspectives: one from a librarian and the other from a scientist. An invaluable resource for collection development for children through adults.
- Great Resource Magazines:
 - *Scientific American* (www.scientificamerican.com)
 - *National Geographic* (ngm.nationalgeographic.com)
 - *Smithsonian Air and Space Magazine* (www.airspacemag.com)
 - *Popular Science* (www.popsci.com)

Thought Questions

- 1) Survey a few teens about their interest in science and technology. Then, on any topic, find 3 websites that would dazzle their curiosity. What is their reaction as you introduce them to such sources?
- 2) How can teachers and librarians work together to link teenagers to the best and most accurate science resources on the web? And to connect readers to science related books?

Spotlight: Science Sites Online

We challenge you to go to NASA's website (www.nasa.gov) and not be interested or excited about what you find there. NASA has individual links for Students, Educators, Media, and more. NASA's Kids' Club section often includes simple introductions to topics YA readers might find interesting. NASA's website has articles about hurricanes and roller coasters, explanations of why astronauts float in space, pictures from the Hubble Telescope, and the latest in astronomy discoveries. The site is easy to navigate and fun for many ages. Other sites to examine include:

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention — www.cdc.gov
- Smithsonian Institute (including the Air and Space Museum) — www.smithsonian.org
- National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration's National Weather Service — www.nws.noaa.gov

41. Science Fiction

Robert A. Heinlein defines science fiction as speculative fiction based on the real world with all its established facts and natural laws. To elaborate this definition, the author of science fiction creates a world governed by the laws of science insofar as science is known at the time of authoring. This fictional world may be placed in past, present, or future time containing all sorts of characters and amazing elements, but the order of that created world is governed by scientific law.

Science fiction has had an amazing history. Consider the following landmarks:

- Mary Shelley's *Frankenstein* in 1818
- Jules Verne with *Journey to the Center of Time* (1864) and *Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea* (1870)
- H.G. Wells with *The Time Machine* (1895) and *War of the Worlds*, the book in 1898, the radio version in 1938, a movie in 1953, and a remake of the movie in 2005

With the turn of the 20th century, interest in science fiction began to develop with Hugo Gernsback's magazine *Modern Electrics*. Gernsback coined the term "science fiction" and the Hugo awards, awards for outstanding science fiction stories and novels, was named after him. C.S. Lewis tried his hand in the genre with *Out of the Silent Planet* in 1938. After World War II, science fiction exploded:

- Ray Bradbury with *The Martian Chronicles* (1950)
- Jack Finney with his film *Invasion of the Body Snatchers* (1956)
- Robert A. Heinlein with *Stranger in a Strange Land* (1960)
- Arthur C. Clarke with both *Rama* series (1970s–1990s) and *2001: A Space Odyssey* (1968)
- Isaac Asimov with his *Foundation* trilogy (1942–1950, published as one in 1950)

In the late 1970s, a movie by the name of *Star Wars* doubled the fans of science fiction overnight. Lucas's hit released two more movies in the 1980s and recently released the prequels in the 21st century. The 1960s saw the birth of Star Trek and the 1980s Star Trek: The Next Generation. Recently, science fiction continues to be popular with such authors as Douglas Adams (*Hitchhiker's Guide to the Galaxy* series, radio and TV series, and movie in 2005), Greg Bear, John Varley, Connie Willis, and Mary Zimmer Bradley. Basic science fiction themes include alien invasion, overpopulation, technology run amok, revolt against conformity, religion, strong women characters, human and computer interaction, and shared universe.

Enthusiasts of either Science Fiction or Fantasy claim to know the difference between the two genres, and either love the one or disdain the other. For the purist, the difference between Science Fiction and Fantasy revolves around a strict definition. In reality, authors seem to dip in and out of scientific or created worlds with enough frequency that the two genres seem to blend at times.

Try these resources:

- *Classics of Science Fiction and Fantasy Literature*. Ed. Fiona Kelleghan. Salem Press, Inc., 2002. 2 volumes.
- *The Year's Best Science Fiction and Fantasy for Teens: First Annual Collection (Year's Best Science Fiction & Fantasy for Teens)*. Ed. Jane Yolen and Patrick Nielsen Hayden. Tor Books, 2005.
- Science Fiction and Fantasy Writers of America—www.sfwaworld.org
- Science Fiction Resource Guide—sf.emse.fr/SFRG/
- Blastr—an online journal and entertainment site at blastr.com

Authors to Know

- Piers Anthony
- Issac Asimov
- Clive Barker
- Ray Bradbury
- Marion Zimmer Bradley
- Terry Brooks
- Orson Scott Card
- Arthur C. Clark
- David Eddings
- Barbara Hambly
- Harry Turtledove
- Robert Jordan
- Anne McCaffrey
- George Orwell
- Frederik Pohl
- Terry Pratchett
- Jules Verne

21st Century YA Science Fiction

- *Feed* by MT Anderson
- *The Last Book in the Universe* by Rodman Philbrick
- *Spacer and Rat* by Margaret Bechard
- *Double Helix* by Nancy Werlin
- *Uglies* series by Scott Westerfeld
- *The Hunger Games* series by Suzanne Collins

Hugo Award Novels

- 2011—*Black/All Clear* by Connie Wilis
2010—*The City e³ The City* by China Miéville and *The Windup Girl* by Paolo Bacigalupi
2009—*The Graveyard Book* by Neil Gaimon
2008—*The Yiddish Policemen's Union* by Michael Chabon
2007—*Rainbows End* by Vernor Vinge
2006—*Spin* by Robert Charles Wilson

Hugo Awards (World Science Fiction Society): www.thehugoawards.org

Spotlight: Ray Bradbury—The Passing of an Icon

Bradbury died in Los Angeles, California on June 5, 2012 at the age of 91 after a "lengthy illness," coincidentally during a rare transit of Venus. *The New York Times'* obituary stated that Bradbury was "the writer most responsible for bringing modern science fiction into the literary mainstream." The *Los Angeles Times* credited Bradbury with the ability "to write lyrically and evocatively of lands an imagination away, worlds he anchored in the here and now with a sense of visual clarity and small-town familiarity." *The Washington Post* hallmarked several modern day technologies that Bradbury had envisioned much earlier in his writing, such as the idea of banking ATMs, earbuds and Bluetooth headsets from *Fahrenheit 451*, and the concepts of artificial intelligence within *I Sing the Body Electric!*

Several celebrity fans of Bradbury paid tribute to the author by stating the influence of his works on their own careers and creations. Filmmaker Steven Spielberg stated that Bradbury was "[his] muse for the better part of [his] sci-fi career.... On the world of science fiction and fantasy and imagination he is immortal." Writer Neil Gaiman felt that "the landscape of the world we live in would have been diminished if we had not had him in our world." President Barak Obama said: "For many Americans, the news of Ray Bradbury's death immediately brought to mind images from his work, imprinted in our minds, often from a young age. His gift for storytelling reshaped our culture and expanded our world. But Ray also understood that our imaginations could be used as a tool for better understanding, a vehicle for change, and an expression of our most cherished values. There is no doubt that Ray will continue to inspire many more generations with his writing, and our thoughts and prayers are with his family and friends." Excerpt retrieved from http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ray_Bradbury

Golden Duck Awards: Hal Clement Award for Young Adults Subdivision

- 2011—Weber, David. *A Beautiful Friendship* (Star Kingdon) and Candlewick, Anna S. *A Long Sleep*.
2010—Sawyer, Robert J. *WWW.Watch*.
2009—Collins, Suzanne. *The Hunger Games*. and Doctorow, Cory. *Little Brother*
2008—Brin, David. *Sky Horizon*.
2007—Hautman, Pete. *Rash*.
2006—Pulse, Simon. *Uglies*.
2005—Lee, Sharon and Steve Miller. *Balance of Trade*.
2004—Turtledove, Harry. *Gunpowder Empire*

Thought Questions

- 1) Why does science fiction seem to capture the attention of many teen boys?
- 2) If parents express concern about teens reading too much science fiction, what would you recommend?

42. Fantasy

If teachers and librarians can't hook teens into reading or watching science fiction, there is another option. Fantasy, or fantastic fiction, is often more popular than science fiction. Fantasy authors do not operate on the restrictive rules of science. However, as they create fantasy worlds, civilizations, and characters, the authors are required to build the rules of their society/place and then consistently apply those rules throughout the story. For example, in *The Lord of the Rings* we meet various groups such as Orcs, Elves, Dwarves, and Hobbits, each with their own physical and social characteristics and interactions that last throughout the entire trilogy. Fantasy stories most often center around one of the following themes:

- The Quest—The hero is sent on a mission to conquer obstacles, to seek a destiny, or to capture a prize.
- Good vs. Evil—The classic clash between the force and its dark side.
- Time Travel—Forward or back, or perhaps both.
- Animal fantasy—The rabbits of *Watership Down* or Brian Jacques's *Redwall* characters.
- Utopias and Dystopias—Perfect societies or broken ones.
- King Arthur legend—There will never be an end, even though Sean Connery tried.

Consider the following landmarks in fantasy:

- Homer's *Odyssey*
- Old English poem *Beowulf*
- Sir Thomas Malory's *Le Morte D'Arthur*
- Shakespeare's *A Midsummer Night's Dream*
- *Gulliver's Travels* by Jonathan Swift
- Brother's Grimm and other fairy tale authors
- Lewis Carroll's *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*

Fantasy really began to find its footing with the following titles:

- *The Hobbit* and *The Lord of the Rings* trilogy by J.R.R. Tolkien
- C.S. Lewis's *Chronicles of Narnia*
- Ursula K. Le Guin's *Earthsea* series

Fantasy short fiction was usually published in science fiction magazines. This all changed in 1949 when the first issue of *Magazine of Fantasy & Science Fiction* was published. The latter half of the century saw a boost to the fantasy genre. Terry Brooks's *Sword of Shannara* in 1977 was hugely popular and made bestseller lists. Since then, fantasy has only grown and will continue to do so. With the rise of film, attention is brought to the classics of fantasy, and readership is booming.

Teen readers of fantasy seem to feel that the longer the books are, the better. They will judge a library's collection based on how many complete series there are on the shelves—and how much shelf space is devoted to fantasy and fantasy-related titles.

Here are some selected titles that teens will enjoy:

- Castelucci, Cecil. *The Year of the Beasts*. (2012)
- Lanagan, Margo. *Tender Morsels*. (2008)
- Black, Holly. *Valiant: A Modern Tale of Faerie*. (2005)
- Larbalestier, Justine. *Magic or Madness*. (2005)
- Wood, Maggie. *The Divided Realms Series*. (2011)
- Constable, Kate. *The Tenth Power*. (2007)
- Fisher, Catherine. *Day of the Scarab. The Oracle Prophecies: Book Three*. (2006)
- Pratchett, Terry. *Wintersmith*. (2006)
- Stroud, Jonathan. *Ptolemy's Gate: Bartimaeus Trilogy Book 3*. (2007)
- Hale, Shannon. *The Goose Girl*. (2005)
- Riordan, Rick. *The Last Olympian (Percy Jackson and the Olympians, Book 5)*. (2009)
- Neff, Henry H. *The Fiend and the Forge: Book Three of The Tapestry*. (2010)

A good source for finding young adult fantasy titles is Goodreads. Check out the lists at http://www.goodreads.com/list/show/2693.Best_Fantasy_and_Sci-Fi_Books_for_Teens

Classic High Fantasy Series

- J. R. R. Tolkien's *The Lord of the Rings* (set in Middle-earth)
- Terry Brooks's *The Sword of Shannara* and its sequels
- Lord Dunsany's *The King of Elfland's Daughter*
- David Eddings' *Belgariad* and *The Malloreon*
- Robert Jordan's *The Wheel of Time* series
- Ursula K. Le Guin's *A Wizard of Earthsea* and its sequels
- George R. R. Martin's *A Song of Ice and Fire* series
- Margaret Weis' and Tracy Hickman's *Dragonlance* series
- Roger Zelazny's *Amber* series

A List of Recent Great New Fantasy to Consider

- Constable, Kate. *The Tenth Power*. (2007)
- Fisher, Catherine. *Day of the Scarab. The Oracle Prophecies: Book Three*. (2006)
- Pratchett, Terry. *Wintersmith*. (2006)
- Stroud, Jonathan. *Ptolemy's Gate: Bartimaeus Trilogy Book 3*. (2007)
- Hale, Shannon. *The Goose Girl*. (2005)
- Riordan, Rick. *The Last Olympian (Percy Jackson and the Olympians, Book 5)*. (2009)
- Neff, Henry H. *The Fiend and the Forge: Book Three of The Tapestry*. (2010)

Thought Questions

- 1) What is the major reason that most teens find so captivating about fantasy?
- 2) What would a top ten list of fantasy titles be for teenagers you know?

Spotlight: Robin McKinley

Robin McKinley is an American writer who has won many awards in the US, including the Newbery Medal for *The Hero and the Crown*, a Newbery Honor for *The Blue Sword*, and the Mythopoeic Award for Adult Literature for *Sunshine*. She lives in Hampshire, England with her husband, author Peter Dickinson, two hellhounds nicknamed Chaos and Darkness, an 1897 Steinway upright named Rhodanthe, and increasing numbers of rose bushes wedged into three tiny gardens. The view out her office window is her change-ringing bell tower and in the next village over is a paragon among horses whom Robin is so fortunate as to have permission to ride. Excerpt retrieved from robinmckinleysblog.com.

Check out her blog at robinmckinleysblog.com.

J.K. Rowling and the Harry Potter Frenzy

J.K. Rowling and her immensely popular Harry Potter series hardly need mentioning. However, we would be remiss in not acknowledging the tremendous influence her books have had on the genre of fantasy and reading in general. On July 21, 2007, the seventh, and last, book in the series, *Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows* was released. It reportedly sold over 11 million copies in the first 24 hours with lines at many bookstores reaching around the block. Although the books grew increasingly darker and seemed aimed at an older audience, readers from second grade through adult embraced each book and enjoy the movies based on the books.

Learn all about J.K. Rowling and her writing by visiting her official website at www.jkrowling.com

Top 10 Fantasy Books from Fantasy 100*

1. *Lord of the Rings* Trilogy by J.R.R. Tolkien
2. *Harry Potter* Series by J.K. Rowling
3. *The Hobbit* by J.R.R. Tolkien
4. *A Song of Ice & Fire* by George R.R. Martin
5. *Wheel of Time* Series by Robert Jordan
6. *The Lion, the Witch, and the Wardrobe* by C.S. Lewis
7. *The Belgariad* Series by David Eddings
8. *Wizard's First Rule* by Terry Goodkind
9. *Magician* by Raymond E. Feist
10. *Eragon* by Christopher Paolini

43. Mysteries and Horror for Teens

When the Stratemeyer Syndicate began publishing series, they recognized the popularity of mystery with children and introduced The Hardy Boys and Nancy Drew. As the young adult market emerged the genre was there too. Teens became fans of mysteries (and suspense). The literature teens experience as young readers lays the groundwork for the literature that teens know and read.

The main genre of mystery has many sub-genres including suspense, horror, and thrillers. In the past few years, the subgenres of suspense and supernatural have topped the popularity charts. Mysteries primarily focus on the “whodunit” aspect of a crime. Clues are revealed, sometimes false clues (red herrings), and in the end all is revealed. In suspense titles readers know the culprit of the crime and the suspense builds around the interaction the unsuspecting characters have with the villain. Most spy novels are thrillers in which the hero must stop some major act and save the world. Spy novels are impacted by current politics as villains have changed from Nazis, to KGB, to Al-Qaeda style terrorists. Supernatural and horror novels often play on the psychological elements of human nature. Supernatural fiction accepts the presence of witches, vampires, werewolves, zombies, and other supernatural creatures, but not always as evil monsters.

Many authors have published single mystery or suspense stories, but several authors have published series. In past decades, Jay Bennett published more than fourteen traditional mysteries in which the characters struggled to decipher clues and solve the riddle. Lois Duncan also wrote mysteries, including *I Know What You Did Last Summer* (1973) and *Killing Mr. Griffin* (1978). Joan Lowery Nixon also published prolifically, mostly in the ‘80s and ‘90s. Nixon’s titles included *The Kidnapping of Christina Lattimore* (1979) and *The Other Side of Dark* (1986). Nixon’s novels moved mystery toward the suspense genre. In the mid-eighties Christopher Pike entered into the suspense arena with *Getting Even* (1985). Pike published over sixty novels for young adults before the end of the millennium. Shortly after Pike entered the scene, R.L. Stine emerged with his *Fear Street* series, *Goosebumps* series (younger readers), and *Dangerous Girls* (a vampire series). Extremely popular for many years, his series popularity has diminished in recent years.

At the turn of the century, vampires, witches, and werewolves were popular characters in a new breed of horror. Annette Curtis Klause’s werewolf love story *Blood and Chocolate* (1997) was a romance and an examination of the politics of a werewolf clan. *Daughters of the Night*, a series by Lynn Ewing (2000–2004), continued the romantic element that came into great popularity in 2008 with Stephenie Meyer’s four books in the *Twilight Saga*. The *Twilight* series surrounds Edward (a vampire) and Jacob (a werewolf) and what Bella’s sacrifice will bring. Is this mystery/horror or plain fantasy? The line is thin and only the reader can decide. The very popular movies based on the *Twilight* books helped the popularity of the books to peak. Meyer planned a fifth volume, *Midnight Sun*, to be told from Edward's perspective, but in 2008 an early draft was illegally leaked and published on the Internet. Meyer halted the writing (www.stepheniemeyer.com/midnightsun.html). Meyer says that she knows readers want Edward's story so someday the book will be published. For now her rough draft is on her site.

In the early 2000s, spies found their way into teen fiction. Alex Rider titles by Anthony Horowitz have found an audience with all readers. Alex, a teenage boy, works for a British spy agency and battles evil terrorist types. The first book, *Stormbreaker* (2000), premiered as a movie in 2006. Fabulous spy toys are detailed in *Alex Rider: The Gadgets* (2006) (a related title

that could be a model in teaching technical writing). The 9th and last title in the series, *Scorpio Rising*, was published in 2011. Although the book series sold more than 12 million copies, plans for a second movie in the series, *Point Blank*, was abandoned due to the poor box office showing for *Stormbreaker*.

Frank Peretti, an extremely successful adult Christian fiction novelist, has become a popular author of teen literature as well. His series, The Veritas Project, was very popular in the early 2000s but only consisted of two titles. His use of metaphor and allegory helps to shape his message. Ted Dekker, another Christian suspense writer, and Peretti co-authored a suspense thriller, *House* (2006), which became a movie in 2006. Dekker is an adult Christian writer whose books often appeal to teens and whose thrilling novels manage to twist perceptions into heart-stopping suspense.

Titles from Touchstone Authors

- Atwater-Rhodes, Amelia. *Token of Darkness* (2010); *All Just Glass* (2012) — Supernatural
- Beaufrand, Mary Jane. *The River* (2010); published in paperback as *Dark River* (2012) — Mystery
- Bennett, Holly. The Bonemender Series; *Shapeshifter* (2010); *Redwing* (2012) — Supernatural
- Brooks, Kevin. *Dawn* (2009); *iBoy* (2011) — Mystery
- Butcher, A.J. The Spy High series. — Mystery
- Clark, Mary Higgins. *The Shadow of Your Smile* (2010) — Suspense
- Cooney, Caroline. *If the Witness Lied* (2009); *Three Black Swans* (2010); *They Never Came Back* (2010) — Mystery
- Doctorow, Cory. *Little Brother* (2008); *For the Win* (2010); *Pirate Cinema* (2012) — Techno Thriller
- Duncan, Lois. *Don't Look Behind You* (2010, reissue),
- Ferguson, Alane. Forensic Mystery Series: *The Dying Breath: Book 4* (2009); *The Forensic Academy Murders: Book 5* (2012) — Mystery
- Fredericks, Mariah. In the Cards series (2007–2009); *The Girl in the Park* (2012) — Mystery
- Giles, Gail. *Dark Song* (2011) — Psychological Thriller
- Horowitz, Anthony. Alex Rider Series: *Crocodile Tears* — Book 8 (2009); *Scorpio Rising* — Book 9 (2011) — Spy/Thriller
- King, A.S. *Please Ignore Vera Dietz* (2010) — Mystery
- Klass, David. *Timelock: Caretaker Trilogy Book 5* (2009) — Psychological Thriller
- Miller, Barnabas and Jordan Orlando. *7 Souls* (2010) — Mystery
- Pascal, Francine. *Fearless* series — Mystery/Supernatural
- Plum-Ucci, Carol. *Streams of Babel* (2008); sequel *Fire Will Fall* (2010) — Mystery
- Pullman, Philip. *Once Upon a Time in the North: His Dark Materials* (2008) — Mystery
- Qualey, Marsha. *Come in from the Cold* (2008) — Mystery
- Reiss, Kathryn. *Blackthorn Mystery* (2007) — Mystery/Supernatural
- Shan, Darren. *Cirque du Freak* series; *The Demonata #10: Hell's Heroes* (2010); *The Saga of Larten Crepsley* series: *Birth of a Killer* (2010); *Ocean of Blood* (2011); *Palace of the Damned* (forthcoming) — Supernatural/Horror
- Springer, Nancy. *The Case of the Gypsy Goodbye: An Enola Holmes Mystery* (2010) — Psychological Thriller
- Werlin, Nancy. *The Rules of Survival* (2006); *Impossible* (2008) — Psychological Thriller/Suspense
- Weston, Robert Paul. *Dust City* (2010) — Mystery
- Wynne-Jones, Tim. *The Uninvited* (2009) — Mystery

Adult Mystery Writers for Teens

Mystery

Sir Arthur Conan Doyle
Sue Grafton
Agatha Christie
Tony Hillerman
Lillian Jackson Braun
Ridley Pearson

Horror/Supernatural

Edgar Allen Poe
Stephen King
Dean Koontz
Kay Hooper

Spy/Thriller

Tom Clancy
Ian Fleming
Stephen Hunter

Suspense

Harlan Coben
John Grisham
John Sandford

Edgar Awards for Best Young Adult Mystery

www.theedgars.com

- 2012 Winner: *The Silence of Murder* by Dandi Daley Mackall.
- 2011 Winner: *The Interrogation of Gabriel James* by Charlie Price
- 2010 Winner: *Reality Check* by Peter Abrahams
- 2009 Winner: *Paper Towns* by John Green

Spotlight: Nancy Werlin

In 1998 Nancy Werlin published *The Killer's Cousin*. It was Nancy's second book and her first psychological thriller. The protagonist of the novel has moved in with his aunt and uncle after the death of his girlfriend, Emily. David feels responsible for Emily's death. It is, however, his cousin Lily who uses her hostility to guard her own deep secret and guilt. *The Killer's Cousin* won the Edgar Award for Best Young Adult Mystery.

After *The Killer's Cousin*, Werlin published *Locked Inside* (2000), another psychological mystery. In this novel Marnie has isolated herself from the world around her by playing an online video game. When Marnie is kidnapped, there is no one to come to her rescue, and she must rely on her wits to survive and escape.

Werlin followed *Locked Inside* with *Black Mirror* (2001) and in 2004, Werlin's fourth book was published. *Double Helix* was a combination of intrigue, scientific research, and much mystery as two unsuspecting teenagers seek to uncover the secrets in Dr. Wyatt's research lab and the connection he has to their families.

In 2006, Werlin's *The Rules of Survival* introduced one of the most horrific mother characters in the history of Young Adult literature.

Suspense, fantasy, and romance combine in her 2008 novel, *Impossible*. Seventeen-year-old Lucy discovers the curse that has plagued the women in her family for three generations. There tasks she can complete to ward off the curse—but they are near impossible. Is she strong enough? In 2010 Werlin combined mystery with the Faerie world in *Extraordinary*.

Nancy Werlin's mysteries are complex, well developed page-turners that keep the reader's interest as the mystery unfolds, deepens, and becomes more dangerous. Check out the latest information about the author at www.nancywerlin.com.

Thought Questions

- 1) Why are formula plots popular in books by authors such as R.L. Stine, Mary Higgins Clark, or Stephen King?
- 2) Has the trend toward graphic depiction of violence affected the quality of the plots currently being produced as compared to the all-time classics of Agatha Christie?
- 3) Which do you prefer: mystery or suspense novels (regardless of the sub-genre)? Explain why.

44. A History of Hollywood in Brief

An important entertainment piece of teen's lives are movies, an audience that Hollywood has come to recognize and to which they actively market. Motion pictures have a rich history and there are films that are classics, much like print materials.

In 1877 a photographer developed a system for taking motion pictures and the race was on to create a way to both take and view moving pictures. In the mid-1890s in both Paris (Dec. 1895) and New York (Apr. 1896), the first motion pictures were screened in public. It wasn't until 1903 that the first blockbuster was released to the public. The eleven-minute film, *The Great Train Robbery*, became a big hit. The success of *The Great Train Robbery* led to the opening of movie theaters called nickelodeons (admission was five cents) across the United States by the end of the decade.

In the beginning movies were silent and often accompanied in the theater by musicians. It was during this era that D. W. Griffith made *The Birth of a Nation* (1915), a film both highly praised and severely criticized. Europe and Russia were also contributing to the film industry with films such as *Nosferatu* (1922) and *The Battleship Potemkin* (1925). However, while silent films proved popular, inventors still searched for a way to add sound. In 1927 *The Jazz Singer* surprised audiences with the few scenes in which Al Jolson sang and spoke. In 1928 Walt Disney entered onto the scene with *Steamboat Willie*, the first animated short with sound.

"Talkies" changed the movie industry. Some stars of the silent screen were unable to make the jump to films with sound, while others transitioned well. The focus on sound reduced the emphasis on some other artistic elements, but "talkies" were popular with the public. Also occurring during the thirties was the introduction of Technicolor, first used by Disney in animated films and in *Becky Sharp* (1935) for the first time in a full-length feature. Color didn't really take off until the 1950s, however, as a way to distinguish film from television.

Despite the "threat" of television, the demise of the studio system, and the attack of McCarthyism films, the Hollywood industry continued to grow. In the 1970s changes in the distribution system introduced the concept of a blockbuster. The first film to benefit by the new distribution system was Coppola's *The Godfather* (1972). In 1975 Stephen Spielberg had his first summer blockbuster with *Jaws*, and George Lucas brought us the first in the *Star Wars* franchise in 1977. For the next several years, big budget films dominated Hollywood's production. Film festivals began and introduced audiences and distributors to independent films, some of which "blew up" and became box office hits. The tension between big budget and independent films has dominated the last twenty years. Now film distribution systems such as RedBox and Netflix is changing everything.

Film Festivals

There are thousands of festivals around the world, in different cities and countries, although a few have garnered international attention and respect.

Cannes Film Festival
Sundance Film Festival
Toronto International Film Festival
San Francisco International Film Festival
Locarno Film Festival
Venice Film Festival

25 Top Teen Movies

1. The Breakfast Club—1985
2. Fast Times at Ridgmont High—1982
3. Dazed and Confused—1993
4. Rebel Without a Cause—1955
5. Heathers—1989
6. American Graffiti—1973
7. Clueless—1995
8. Boys N the Hood—1991
9. Election—1999
10. Ferris Bueller's Day Off—1986
11. Say Anything...—1989
12. Mean Girls—2004
13. High School—1968
14. Donnie Darko—2001
15. Carrie—1976
16. Lucas—1986
17. Peggy Sue Got Married—1986
18. Rock 'n' Roll High School—1979
19. The Last Picture Show—1971
20. Dead Poets Society—1989
21. Grease—1978
22. American Pie—1999
23. Cooley High—1975
24. Rushmore—1998
25. Hoosiers—1986

Source:

<http://www.filmsite.org/50bestsfilms.html>

First 10 of AFI's Top 100 Movies of All Time (10th Anniversary Edition)

1. *Citizen Kane* (1941)
2. *The Godfather* (1972)
3. *Casablanca* (1942)
4. *Raging Bull* (1980)
5. *Singin' in the Rain* (1952)
6. *Gone with the Wind* (1939)
7. *Lawrence of Arabia* (1962)
8. *Schindler's List* (1993)
9. *Vertigo* (1958)
10. *The Wizard of OZ* (1939)

www.afi.com/100Years/movies10.aspx
Check out their other film downloadable lists.

Spotlight: The Oscars

Every year the red carpet is rolled out and the industry recognizes achievements from the previous year. Established in 1927 the Academy of Motion Picture Arts and Sciences holds a ceremony each year to award the best films and performances of the previous year. The ceremony has affectionately been known as The Oscars because of the gold plated statue awarded to winners.

When the first ceremony was held in May of 1929, it is unlikely those attending could imagine the extravaganza the now-televised ceremony would become. As the popularity of the ceremony has increased throughout history, the Oscars find themselves on different nights in different venues, but always attended in glamour and style.

The Academy recognizes the best director, film, actor, and actress. In 1936 supporting actors/actresses began to be recognized. Other categories that have been added include documentary, makeup, and a division of the special effects category.

While the Academy's highly guarded votes may eventually be criticized, the evening continues to draw a large worldwide audience and lend credibility to the nominees as the best of the previous year.

Keeping Up

- Entertainment Weekly—quarterly issues on upcoming movies for Spring, Summer, Fall, Winter.
- <http://www.apple.com/trailers/>
- <http://www.mtv.com/movies/>
- <http://www.afi.com>
- *Leonard Maltin's 2011 Movie Guide* (annual)
- *Roger Ebert's Movie Yearbook* (annual)

Thought Question

With a group of teens, create a top 15 list of the greatest movies they have seen. Compare their list with your own and with the AFI list or any other comparable list.

45. Theater/Drama

By the teenage years young people should have experienced puppet plays, Readers Theater, and live skits or plays about such things as the first Thanksgiving. They have also experienced drama translated into hundreds of television and motion picture plays. During the teenage years students in high schools have the opportunity to experience theater as an elective but also as a part of their language arts curriculum. In addition, teens may find dramatic opportunities in community theater and in the current rage of writing their own scripts for home videos. It is useful for both teachers and librarians to have knowledge of a wide range of dramatic experience from classical theater to operetta to modern Broadway and to the many one-act plays that are published and usable by teens. Connections to drama in the Asian culture can also provide richness to the teen dramatic experience.

The oldest recorded Western theater comes from the Greeks. Most of the classical Greek dramas were written in three parts, three individual plays telling one great story. The performances consisted of only a few men who wore masks for different characters. Onstage at all times was the chorus who sang songs throughout the performance. Some of the greatest playwrights in this era were Sophocles, Euripides, and Aeschylus.

After the Greeks, the Romans took on the same type of theater, but it didn't last long. Theater didn't emerge in the Western world until the Middle Ages. This is where theater as we know it began. The Catholic Church would have its monks act out certain stories from the Bible in Latin. Somehow, and we don't know how or why, these plays moved out onto the church steps. Three types of plays emerged: Mystery (stories based on the Bible), Miracle (stories of the saints), and Morality (allegorical, like *Everyman*, that taught of human vice and virtue). These plays began to be played by traveling groups that would perform on wagons or platform stages in the town center.

During the Renaissance, the traveling performers gathered and became more settled into their own theaters. Playwrights like Shakespeare and Marlowe began writing more secular material. But there were problems with the theater: Protestants and the Plague. When the Plague would break out in an area, theaters would immediately be closed because the close quarters would help it spread faster. Protestants felt that theaters were centers of evil, and many times theaters were forced to close from Protestant leaders.

Theater continued into the 1700s, but it wasn't nearly as popular. The 1800s brought back the lavishness of the theater. The 19th century was a blooming of theater and playwrights; this blossoming never died out. It continued to grow well into the 20th and 21st centuries. Theater has become a staple to the arts.

The biggest tradition outside the Western tradition of theater lies in Japan. The Japanese have three types of theater that have lasted for centuries: Noh, Bunraku, and Kabuki. Noh uses intricate masks to portray the lead character, the only set decoration is a painting of a tree in the background, the costumes are lavish, and the movement is slow and controlled. Bunraku involves puppets, but these are no ordinary puppets. They are at least half the size of a normal human, and it takes a master puppeteer to control the head and right arm and two other puppeteers to operate the rest. There is hardly any dialogue; there is just monotonal chanting. The last form of Japanese theater, Kabuki, also uses chanting. The actors wear elaborate makeup, but the action is similar to action in any play you would see.

Teens may experience professional theater by reading or performing in three-act plays like *The Importance of Being Earnest*, *10 Little Indians*, *Harvey*, *Arsenic and Old Lace*, or read other plays written by Arthur Miller and Tennessee Williams. More contemporary pieces may include *Zap!* by Paul Fleischman, *You're Dead* by William Mastrosimone, *The Nerd and The Foreigner* by Larry Shue, and *Chemical Imbalance: A Jekyll and Hyde Play* by Lauren Wilson. Teens may also participate in operettas such as *Oklahoma*, *Joseph and the Amazing Technicolor Dreamcoat*, *High School Musical* or *Anything Goes*. Generally teens are involved in these musicals because the royalties are affordable. Teens may also be able to experience Broadway theater, either in New York or Broadway plays on tour like *Phantom of the Opera*, *Cats*, *Wicked*, or *Les Miserables*. Librarians and teachers should encourage teens to take

advantage of the many opportunities there are to perform in and attend these wonderful plays, from Broadway to community.

Major Playwrights: Greek, American, and British

Greek

Aristophanes
Sophocles
Euripides

Renaissance

William Shakespeare
Christopher Marlowe

1700s

John Dryden
William Congreve
Aphra Behn
Oliver Goldsmith

1800s

Oscar Wilde
George Bernard Shaw
J.M. Barrie
Alexander Dumas

1900s

Anthony Shaffer
Arthur Miller
David Rabe
Edward Albee
Eugene O'Neill
Graham Greene
Henry James
Horton Foote
Lorraine Hansberry
Neil Simon
Noel Coward
Samuel Beckett
Tennessee Williams
Thornton Wilder
Tom Stoppard
Tony Kushner

2000s

John Logan

Resource:

The Complete Audition Book for Young Actor: A Comprehensive Guide to Winning by Enhancing Acting Skills by Roger Ellis. Meriwether Press, 2004.

Spotlight: Arthur Miller

Arthur Miller was born in 1915 in Manhattan to Jewish immigrant parents. His father's garment business failed during the Depression, and Miller saw his first dose of tragedy. After graduating from high school, Miller worked various odd jobs to earn money to go to college. He began college in 1934 at the University of Michigan, where he began writing plays. After college, Miller returned to New York and produced his first play, *The Man Who Had All the Luck*, a complete flop. His next play, *All My Sons*, produced in 1947, was an instant hit. Only two years later, *Death of a Salesman*, Miller's biggest and most respected play, appeared. It was a phenomenal success, winning a Pulitzer Prize, winning the Drama Critics Circle Award, and being translated into over a dozen languages. In the 1950s, Miller wrote *The Crucible*, a play about the Salem witch trials, yet a blatant attack on McCarthyism. Three years later, Miller was called in front of the House Committee for un-American activities. His playwright activities died down until the 1990s. Miller continued to stay in spotlight until his death on February 10, 2005.

Keeping Up

- Broadway: <http://www.broadway.com/>
- Tony Awards — <http://www.tonyawards.com>
- *Best Plays Theater Yearbook 2008-2009* Limelight Editions.
- *The Norton Anthology* — both British and American drama
- *The Oxford Companion to the Theatre and Performance*. (2010) (also check other titles in the Oxford Companion series.
- Vlastnik, Frank. *Broadway Musicals: 101 Greatest Shows of All time*. Black Dog, 2010

Thought Questions

- 1) Interview middle and high school English teachers to see what kinds of drama experiences they promote in their classes. How can you as a librarian or teacher help contribute to their agenda?
- 2) What local opportunities are there for viewing or acting in various drama productions? How can you get teens involved in them?

46. Dance

Virtually every culture in every time period has used movement for recreation, cultural expression, or to connect to the spiritual. For the teens of today, we might divide dance into three categories: performance dance including ballet and theater dance; cultural dance including folk dancing and dancing within contemporary cultures; and social dancing including ballroom, western dancing, and street/club dancing.

Teens interested in performance dancing usually begin their training early in childhood with ballet, tap, jazz, or ice dancing lessons. These teens will appreciate literature connected with the techniques of their work, great performances in their field, and biographies of their favorite heroes and heroines. They will be interested in knowing where performances and competitions are located and will be anxious to see great performances nearby.

Cultural dancing is often a part of school curriculums where young people, including teenagers, are becoming acquainted with many cultures and civilizations throughout the world. They may be researching costuming and actual performance of folk dances to give a flavor of a culture at a particular time period. Their interest will not only be in books but in video segments showing authentic dances ranging from a Navajo rain dance to a Russian country dance.

As a part of the popular culture experience, most teens participate in street dancing to very loud music with a strong beat. Their steps at this point in time seem to the average adult as random gyrations rather than carefully learned sequences. Still other teens formulate their social dancing reminiscent of formal ballroom dancing to the western line dancing and swing dancing from the 1950s. For this type of dancing, teens will be most interested in finding the “perfect” music in which to express their movement.

ABC made ballroom dance popular again with its show *Dancing With the Stars*. The show has 10 celebrities partnered with professionals and they have to learn ballroom dance routines in a very short amount of time. Originally aired as a summer program in 2005, the ratings skyrocketed, prompting ABC to continue doing the show. With ABC’s success, other networks joined in. Fox has *So You Think You Can Dance*, where contestants dance in partners and individually and America votes. These shows have influenced teens, and everyone else, showing that ballroom and professional dancing aren’t just for old-timers.

Here are selected titles for dance:

- Emery, Airin. *Tutu Much*. Lechner Syndications, 2011
- Ross, Frank Russell. *Soul Dancing!: The Essential African American Cultural Dance Book*. National Dance Association, 2011
- Pristine, Nancy. *Victory Dancing for Teens*. 2010.
- Garfunkel, Trudy. *On Wings of Joy: The Story of Ballet from the 16th Century to Today*. E-Reads Ltd., 2002.
- Livingstone, Lili Cockerville. *American Indian Ballerinas*. University of Oklahoma Press, 1999.
- *Dancing with the Stars: Jive, Samba, and Tango Your Way into the Best Shape of Your Life*. 2007
- Jones, Bill T., and Susan Kuklin. *Dance! with Bill T. Jones*. Hyperion, 1998.
- Tambini, Michael. *Eyewitness: Dance*. DK Children, 2005.
- Brennan, Helen. *The Story of Irish Dance*. Robert Reinhart Publishers, 2001.
- *Invitation to Dance* — This is a VHS that has many versions including Latin Dancing and Ballroom Dancing.
- Lane, Christy. *Christy Lane’s Complete Book of Line Dancing*. Human Kinetics, 2000.
- *International Encyclopedia of Dance: A Project of Dance Perspectives*. Ed. Selma Jeanne Cohen, Dance Perspectives Foundation. Oxford University Press, 1998.

- Clarke, Steve. *Seeing While Being Seen: Dance Photography...* AAHPERD, 2005.
- Levy, Fran J. *Dance Movement Therapy: A Healing Art.* AAHPERD, 2005.
- Glass, Barbara S. *African American Dance: an Illustrated History.* McFarland, 2007.

Different Classifications of Dance*

Folk Dancing

- Clogging
- Mazurka
- Polka
- Quadrille
- Maypole dance
- Irish step dancing
- Belly dancing

Country/Western

- Square dancing
- Line dancing
- Two-step
- Shuffle

Ballroom Dance

- Waltz
- Tango
- Foxtrot
- Quickstep

Latin

- Cha-Cha
- Samba
- Rumba
- Jive
- Salsa
- Bolero

Swing Dance

- Lindy Hop
- East Coast
- West Coast

Street

- Hip Hop
- Break dancing

Ballet

- Romantic
- Classical
- Modern

Theater

- Tap

Spotlight: Bill T. Jones

Bill T. Jones has earned quite the reputation in the dance community. He was trained at the State University of New York at Binghamton. He studied classical ballet and modern dance. After graduation, he formed a partnership with Arnie Zane and they began to perform all over the country. Jones's dance moves turn the human body into a form of expressing art, creating many wonderful and artful poses and moves. He and his partner formed their dance company in 1982, and the company has been a main staple for over twenty years. Jones has performed and choreographed many theater productions, television shows, and other events. Jones has received many awards including the MacArthur Fellowship, three New York Dance and Performance ("Bessie") Awards, Dance Magazine Award, and was named "An Irreplaceable Dance Treasure" by The Dance Heritage Coalition. Bill Jones has received 5 honorary doctorates, including one from Julliard, and has written many books. Explore his website at www.billtjones.org to see some pictures and performances of his art.

Keeping Up

- (AAHPERD) at <http://www.aahperd.org>
- National Dance Association (NDA) — <http://www.aahperd.org/nda/>

Movies

- *Footloose*
- *Saturday Night Fever*
- *Save the Last Dance*
- *Dirty Dancing*
- *Strictly Ballroom*
- *Chicago*
- *Shall We Dance*
- *Mañ Hot Ballroom*
- *Take the Lead*
- *Step Up*
- *Honey*

Thought Question

Who are the teenagers in your classrooms or organizations who are interested in dance outside the regular pop scene? What interests of theirs could you support?

47. Fine Music

While popular music commands a huge following in the teen world, there is a certain percentage of teens that not only enjoy serious or classical music, but are preparing themselves to be performers and composers in this genre. Local music teachers are a good source of identifying this segment of the local teen population and can help identify their needs that teachers and librarians can feed.

In the general teen population, however, school curriculums contain introductions and expectations that all children and teens be exposed to serious music. These introductions generally center on the western classical traditions but are branching out into the serious music of many other cultures.

For many years, kids cartoons introduced children to the great melodies of the classics—the three B's (Beethoven, Bach, and Brahms) as well as Mozart and Tchaikovsky. Even though kids did not have recognition of individual composers, they knew and recognized the composer's work. It is also fascinating to hear the great melodies and classical forms reworked into popular fare by rock, jazz, and even ethnic musicians.

We often think of serious music being orchestral music, but vocal, choral, operatic, and single instrument or small ensembles of instruments constitute a huge part of the "fine music" tradition. Thanks to the recording industry and modern technology, we can hear the original performances of Marie Anderson on the steps of the Lincoln Memorial, Leonard Bernstein conducting the New York Philharmonic, Pavarotti singing a great aria, or Liszt playing one of his own piano concertos.

Communicating with teens that are serious musicians requires a basic knowledge of instruments, musical terminology, and the various musical periods. A children's reference book on music is often a great way to learn the rudiments, particularly if there is an accompanying CD with musical examples. Many introductory websites can help not only adults but also teens that are trying to become familiar with the genre.

Serious teen performers, including individuals, small groups, and large groups, crave opportunities to perform and to attend performances. Teachers and librarians can invite young musicians to perform in classrooms and libraries and help make them aware of opportunities to perform or compete. Good contacts with music teachers or community groups can often lead to invitations for teens to attend wonderful performances either free or at greatly reduced prices. One might begin with seats to the *Phantom of the Opera*, to a pops concert of a touring orchestra, or asking a string quartet to play in the main reading room of the library or in front of a school assembly. High school choirs and orchestras love to perform for major events such as Black History Month, holidays, or any excuse you can dream up. Make opportunities for these performers to do recording sessions and upload their performances to the web as they begin their own portfolios.

☛ Know Your Musical Periods

Baroque (1600–1750)
Classical (1750–1820)
Romantic (1820–1910)
Contemporary (1910–present)

☛ Great Groups and Performers

Boston Symphony Orchestra
Chicago Symphony Orchestra
The San Francisco Opera
The Mormon Tabernacle Choir
St. Martin's-in-the-Field (orchestra)
Kronos Quartet
The 5 Browns (five siblings-teens/20s)

List of Classical Western Composers

18th Century

J.S. Bach
Haydn
Mozart
Handel
Vivaldi

19th Century

Schubert
Chopin
List
Beethoven
Wagner
Berloiz
Dvorak
Brahms
Verdi
Tchaikovsky

20th Century

Bartok
Vaughan Williams
Poulenc
Debussy
Ravel
Holst
Copeland
Bernstein
Joplin
Chavez

Don't Forget

The availability of Web 2.0 technologies and services like YouTube.com make it possible to preserve the recordings of our teens. Are you archiving these performances for the Web? One of our teens might go viral.

Spotlight: YoYo Ma

Yo Yo Ma was born in 1955 to Chinese parents in Paris. His cello training began at age 4, and his family moved to New York soon after that. He attended Julliard, and because he wanted liberal arts training in connection with his conservatory training, he attended Harvard University. Since then, Yo Yo Ma has become one of the most popular classical music performers of our time. He has won 15 Grammy awards and released over 50 albums. Along with his traditional classical music, Ma plays a wide variety of music, including Brazilian, African, Appalachian, and many other genres. His repertoire has expanded the definition of what classical music really is. His most recent undertaking has been to be a great supporter to the Silk Road Project: a blanket group to researching and supporting cultural events of countries that lined the ancient silk road. More information can be found at www.silkroadproject.org. Yo Yo Ma is married and has two children.

Artist website: www.yo-yoma.com

Keeping Up

- Community concerts (find your own reliable listings and link teens into them)
- ClassicalNet: www.classical.net/
- ipl.org – The Internet Public Library (find the music section)
- *The Gramophone Classical Music Guide* (annual)

Musical Terminology Quiz

From easy to hard—how many of these musical terms can you define?

Opera	Prelude and fugue
Symphony	Contralto
Concerto	Legato
Aria	Octave
Bassoon	Diapason

48. Fine Art¹

The art experience is perhaps the most common form of culture across all time periods and across all civilizations. In the age of the Internet, access to the world treasury of artistic expression has expanded. Teens exhibiting any aptitude for or curiosity about the arts have electronic access to many of the world's major art museums. Many museums have their vast collections online, enabling digital visitors to sample their collection. The access seems to have spawned a renewed interest in the arts even at a time when educational programs are being drastically cut in the public schools.

In communities where art programs are limited, the local art community has sometimes filled the gap with artists in residence, arts workshops, and even galleries or exhibit programs. Teachers in other curricular areas strive to fill some of the gaps. For example, the science teacher can introduce photomicrography, or the world of space photography using books like *Earth: Our Planet in Space* by Seymour Simon. Math classrooms might examine geometric patterns in nature, on fractals, or even on tessellations, and even share some of the lavish artworks resulting from such experimentation along the way, like those works created by M.C. Escher. Balance in nature might be discussed in relation to the work of Alexander Calder.

Even teens will enjoy those fantastic virtual tours of internationally based museums such as le Musée du Louvre in Paris (<http://www.louvre.fr/en>) where galleries and individual masterpieces may be examined up close, from many angles, or in three dimensions, front and back.

Today the traditional disciplines encompassed by the Fine or Visual Arts—drawing, painting, ceramics, sculpture, printmaking, and other related crafts—have been joined by photography and media or filmmaking, all popular fields with demonstrated career links.

Through the marvels of technology, almost everyone will be able to find something to pique their interest. It just takes enough creativity or motivational activity to start them on the path to investigation.

In the world of books, library collections should contain general histories of art, biographies of artists, reproductions of artistic works of all kinds, and books giving instruction on how to create artistic works, including pottery, painting, drawing, computer art, photography, architecture, or even cartooning. In addition to the library print collection, libraries should also provide links to art collections, museums, galleries, and other collections including those that are local, state, regional, national, and international.

The emerging world of Web 2.0 technology allows anyone to broadcast his or her own art works, photography, video, music, or audio to the world. YouTube.com, Worldvuer.com, various segments of Google software, and a host of other creative sites makes fine art open not just to the experienced and famous, but to everyone. What a wonderful age: Art is for everyone.

□ Literature teachers might discuss the art of Alexander Calder and incorporate a reading of Blue Balliett's *The Calder Game* (2008), a middle grade novel, and *Sandy's Circus: A Story about Alexander Calder* by Tanya Lee Stone (2008), a picture book that will bridge facts to discussion to research.

¹ Nancy Olexo, a student at San José State University, helped write this page.

Influential 20th Century American Artists

Georgia O'Keefe — Realistic
Abstraction
Grant Wood — Social
Regionalism
Grandma Moses — Folk
Norman Rockwell — Realism
Jackson Pollock — Action
Painting
Jacob Lawrence — Social
Realism
Alexander Calder — Abstract
Sculpture
Dorothea Lange —
Documentary Photography
Ansel Adams — Nature
Photography
Andy Warhol — Pop Art
Man Ray — Cubism, Dadaism
and surrealism

□

Art Magazines

- *Be³W* — fine
photography
- *Art Review*
- *International Artist*
- *Juxtapoz: Art and
Culture Magazine*
- *Smithsonian*
- *Art in America*
- *Graphis*
- *Drawn e³ Quarterly*
- *Communication Arts*

⋮

Keeping Up

- Gardiner, *Art through the
Ages*, volumes I and II
- Art Museum Network —
www.amn.org
- Art Resource — wwar.com
- www.artlex.com —
Dictionary of 3600 terms
- Art in Context:
[www.artincontext.org/
artist/default.aspx?Period
_ID=8](http://www.artincontext.org/artist/default.aspx?Period_ID=8)

Spotlight: Louvre Website

The Louvre's website is excellent: (www.louvre.fr/en). Add it to any "Best Art Links" list. The museum has done a wonderful job in making his or her collection accessible to everyone around the world. On their website you can take tours of individual rooms, view pieces in their collection, search label text (French), and read a history of the museum. An interactive element allows visitors to explore individual pieces of art. The art image may be magnified, size adjusted, viewed from the back, and then repositioned on the wall. The Louvre's website is one of the best museum websites available.

Art Books (Fiction and Non-fiction)

- *1001 Paintings You Must See Before You Die*. Rev. ed. by Stephen Farthing (2011) — visual art
- *Digital Photographer's Handbook*, 4th ed, by Tom Ung (2009) — examining photography
- *Art: A World History* by Linda Buchholz (2007) — informational history
- *Girl with a Pearl Earring* by Tracy Chevalier (2001) — visual history
- *Museum: Behind the Scenes at the Metropolitan Museum of Art* by Danny Danziger (2008) — informational book
- *Andy Warhol: Prince of Pop* by Jan Greenberg and Sandra Jordan (2004) — a biography
- *A Single Shard* by Linda Sue Park (2002) — a potter's assistant, fiction
- *Fine Art Photography High Dynamic Range* by Tony Sweet (2011) — informational photographs
- *Getting to Know the World's Greatest Artists* (series) by Mike Venezia (1997–2003) — various classic artists
- *Stonecutter* by Leander Watts (2002) — fiction about an apprentice stonecutter
- *The Color of My Paint* by Mario L. Vazquez (2008) — memoir of a Latin American artist
- *Emitown TP* by Emi Lenox (2011) — Enter the world of a cartoonist
- *So, You Want to Be a Comic Book Artist?* by Philip Amara (2012) — guide book
- *Leonardo da Vinci (Eye on Art)* by Don Nardo (2012) — a biography
- *Michelangelo (Eye on Art)* by Phyllis Raybin Emert (2012) — a biography

□

Thought Questions

- 1) What art experiences, groups, places, or events in your local community are worth linking teens to?
- 2) What educational experiences in the arts are available in your community both at school and other community organizations that are of value to teens?

49. The Western Canon

From the beginning, humans have found a way to tell and share stories with one another. Throughout the last 600 years some stories have stood out and become classics. In Western literature there are poems, dramas, and novels that have become a part of our cultural literacy. They are works that we have some knowledge of even if we haven't read them. They are works that we can expect to experience at some point in our academic lives. They are works that are referenced in other works and re-worked into our popular culture. This body of works can be considered the Western canon of literature. There are ever-evolving definitions of the academic canon in terms of modern literature and favored classical titles, although certain titles and authors will forever remain a part of the canon.

There are a number of titles that form the foundation of this Western canon that were created by the Greeks including Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, plays by Sophocles and Euripides, Plato's *Republic*, and Aristotle's *Poetics*. The Roman era continued to add to the "great works" with poetry from Virgil and the scientific treatise from Ptolemy. Plutarch also added to the canon, and perhaps served as the greatest influence to Renaissance authors, including William Shakespeare.

With the fall of the Roman Empire, the Western world entered a dark age in which little emerged, but what did emerge was significant. It was during the medieval age that Sir Thomas Aquinas produced his works and Dante produced *The Divine Comedy*, which was credited with the emergence of the modern Italian language. Petrarch introduced the love sonnet in which he pined for Laura. On the British Isles Chaucer wrote *The Canterbury Tales*, doing for the English language what Dante did for Italian. The end of the medieval era led into the Renaissance, a time in which arts and literature flourished.

The European Renaissance introduced Michelangelo, William Shakespeare, Thomas Hobbes, Machiavelli, Leonardo Da Vinci, and Galileo, among others. The works of the Renaissance was the beginning of the modern Western canon. The political thought of Machiavelli, Locke, and Hobbes; the scientific and mathematical theories of Galileo, Copernicus, DaVinci, Pascal, and Descartes; and the literature of Shakespeare, Cervantes, Milton, and Spenser all influenced later works.

The Age of Reason followed the Renaissance with works contributed by Jonathon Swift, Rousseau, Daniel Defoe, and Adam Smith. Poetry written by William Blake, Robert Burns, and Alexander Pope emerged. In the American Colonies, religious writing like that by Jonathon Edwards gave way to political treatise as the colonies rebelled and fought for independence. Slave narratives began to appear, and Phyllis Wheatley was the first slave woman to publish with a book of poetry in 1773.

The Romantic Age followed the Age of Reason in the nineteenth century. It was during this time that Melville wrote *Moby Dick*, and Wordsworth and Coleridge wrote poetry such as "The Prelude" and "The Rime of the Ancient Mariner." Other poets included Shelley, Lord Byron, and Keats. Jane Austen's novels were published beginning in 1811 with *Sense and Sensibility*. The Victorian Age followed introducing the Brownings (both Robert and Elizabeth Barrett), Tennyson, and Matthew Arnold. Darwin had his radical theories of evolution. The Brontë sisters published their works: *Jane Eyre* (Charlotte) and *Wuthering Heights* (Emily). In the latter half of the century, Oscar Wilde, Rudyard Kipling, Gustave Flaubert, Fyodor Dostoevsky, Emily Dickinson, and Mark Twain introduced themselves to the world. Twain's *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn* (1885) has been hailed as the quintessential American novel, despite the controversy that surrounds it.

Henry James marks the transition into modernism with his novels that relied on cultural tensions. Edith Wharton and Theodore Dreiser joined James as influences on the development of an independent American literature. They were joined by authors across the Atlantic including Thomas Mann, Franz Kafka, Thomas Hardy, and Joseph Conrad. After World War I, F. Scott Fitzgerald, Ernest Hemingway, Thornton Wilder, and Dorothy Parker found voices for themselves in the United States. Virginia Woolf and James Joyce from England joined these American writers. The Great Depression had a profound influence on the arts, and emerging from that time is John Steinbeck's *The Grapes of Wrath* and *Of Mice and Men*. It is also the decade in which William Faulkner emerged with *The Sound and the Fury* (1929) and *As I Lay Dying* (1930).

Since then, many works have been added to the canon. Harper Lee's *To Kill a Mockingbird* gave us a whole new view of the South and racism. Ray Bradbury, George Orwell and Aldous Huxley gave us bleak outlooks of the future. Kurt Vonnegut Jr. brought us cruel irony in the '60s with his *Cat's Cradle* and *Slaughter-house Five*. Poets like Sylvia Plath and Anne Sexton made poetry confessional.

Probably the most powerful force changing the canon is the widespread use of the Norton Anthology in literature classes. Recent editions have included many minority writers, changing the face of the Western canon.

The Great Debate

Since academia has begun trying to categorize the "great works," there has been debate about both the feasibility and the lists that emerge. There are jokes about the "dead white men" that populate these lists, protests regarding the lack of women and people of color, and arguments of what is included and what is omitted. Harold Bloom has written extensively on the subject of a Western canon and its role in both cultural literacy and academia. His title *The Western Canon: The Books and School of the Ages* (1994) identifies his canon and argues for an accepted identified canon. It may be that it is impossible to characterize the greatest books of all time, although many have tried.

As the debate continues, the Western canon actually continues to expand. Many other literatures are starting to be taught and added to the Western canon. The African American and Latin writers of America have found a new voice in the canon. African and Chinese works are finding their way into classical literature classes. As the Western canon expands to include other parts of the world, teachers of literature are faced with a dilemma: what works have to be left out? One class cannot cover all the works that would be contained in a world canon, so what works should be taught and what should be left out? This tension is not likely to be resolved anytime soon. Fortunately, most of the Canon is freely available on the Internet.

The Lists

- *Great Books of the Western World*. Ed. Mortimer J. Adler. Encyclopedia Britannica, 1994.
- *Harvard Classics*. Ed. Charles W. Elliot.
- Bloom, Harold. *The Western Canon: The Books and the School of the Ages*. Riverhead Trade, 1995.
- Time magazine's list of the 100 best novels of all time:
http://www.time.com/time/2005/100books/the_complete_list.html

Thought Questions

- 1) Go to the list of Harvard Classics (www.bartleby.com/hc/) and get a sense of how much of the Western canon you have read.
- 2) How might teens be introduced to the canon supplemented by works from Asian, African, Islamic, and Latin texts?

50. Emerging Canon

The debate over inclusion into the literary canon that was most prevalent in the eighties and nineties, but that still echoes in today's high schools and colleges, as well as the media, has opened up the door to voices from a variety of backgrounds, cultures, and perspectives. There is an emerging literary canon of "great works" that are taught, or that have become a prevalent aspect of our culture that teens should be aware of and to which they should be introduced. As often the case is when trying to derive a list of great works, there are disagreements and a variety of lists. However, there is common ground to be found in the debate over inclusion.

When the movement for a more inclusive canon that represented the diversity of our world took center stage in the eighties, there were some agreed upon classics. N. Scott Momaday's work *House Made of Dawn* had won the Pulitzer Prize in 1969 and introduced to critical acclaim the Native American voice into the literary canon. Authors that have followed include Louise Erdrich, James Welch, and Leslie Marmon Silko. African Americans have a rich literary tradition as well, and while Phyllis Wheatley's poetry and Fredrick Douglass had a place in the old curriculum, the emerging canon reintroduced Zora Neale Hurston, Langston Hughes, and Countee Cullen, as well as new voices in Alice Walker and Toni Morrison. From Latin America Gabriel Garcia Marquez, Pablo Neruda, and Octavio Paz were among those who were finding a place in the contemporary canon. Gabriel Garcia Marquez successfully introduced magical realism, and not only received critical respect, but popularized the form. Even Harold Bloom included Chinua Achebe's *Things Fall Apart* in his definition of the literary canon. Maxine Hong Kingston, and later Amy Tan, explored Chinese-American issues in universal stories of family relationships.

The emerging canon is still just that—emerging. It continues to develop and change. Voices are rediscovered or new voices emerge. It is difficult to predict which voice will sustain throughout the years, but students should be aware of contemporary authors such as Jhumpa Lahiri who was raised in the United States and often deals with the themes of cultural displacement. The poet Agha Shahid Ali from Kashmir gained attention with a National Book Award nomination for his poetry in 2001. Students and their advocates should look for fresh voices that receive critical attention to broaden their horizons and explore the emerging canon.

Titles to Explore

- *Their Eyes Were Watching God* by Zora Neale Hurston
- *Invisible Man* by Ralph Ellison
- *Nectar in the Sieve* by Kamala Markandaya
- *House Made of Dawn* by N. Scott Momaday
- *Almanac of the Dead* by Leslie Marmon Silko
- *The Beet Queen* by Louise Erdrich
- *Things Fall Apart* by Chinua Achebe
- *A Hundred Years of Solitude* by Gabriel Garcia Marquez
- *Age of Iron* by J.M. Coetzee
- *Woman Warrior* by Maxine Hong Kingston
- *The Joy Luck Club* by Amy Tan
- *Bastard Out of Carolina* by Dorothy Allison
- *Kite Runner* by Khaled Hosseini

Spotlight: *Beloved*

In 2006 the New York Times asked authors and critics what was the best book of the last 25 years. *Beloved* by Toni Morrison received more votes than any other title. While this was a highly subjective poll, it was yet another significant honor for Morrison's best-known work. It received the Pulitzer prize in 1988, a choice that was not without controversy. *Beloved* has become firmly entrenched in the canon. One can argue that it is a token addition, but Morrison's magical realistic look at the cost of slavery has a place in both high schools and college curricula. It would be a mistake to overlook the critical importance of *Beloved* and its role in the canon because its acclaim is high. It's a wonderful new voice in the canon.

Keeping Up

One of the best sources to consult that responds to literatures from around the world is the Norton Anthologies series that are popular collections for college literature classes. If an author is gaining prominence in literary circles, their work will be represented in the anthologies.

Examine the *Norton Anthology of World Literature* published in several size collections and their website of supplementary materials at:
www.wwnorton.com/college/english/worldlit2e/full

Thought Questions

- 1) What role does class play in the emerging canon?
- 2) What classics can be replaced with titles from the emerging canon?

51. Moving On: Books for the College Bound

Upon graduating from high school the majority of American students will have experienced many of the same titles. Those going on to college will be expected to have read more broadly and experienced a canon beyond the core high school curriculum. The titles college-bound teens should experience vary widely from the classics to contemporary fiction, narrative non-fiction, poetry, and biography. While it is conceivable that there is no college-bound senior that has experienced every title, a wide sampling of reading is helpful. A wide variety of reading provides background knowledge for teens as they enter college and informs and teaches them new information they may not have experienced in high school.

The wide variety of titles students can experience allows teens to develop personal taste in reading, and they should be encouraged to read outside their comfort zones. Teens who read only contemporary fiction should be introduced to classics; science fiction readers can be lead to narrative non-fiction; and popular culture-obsessed teens can be encouraged to read biographies of figures that were part of historical popular culture. Teens experience classics that enter into popular culture on a regular basis, from Shakespeare (both more traditional renditions to modern interpretations) to Jane Austen, Henry James to Homer. Use popular culture's renditions to lead teens to the classics.

Teens should also experience contemporary literary fiction. While movies can encourage teen interest in this area as well, so can modeling and bestseller lists. Oprah's book club has focused on more contemporary classics, such as *East of Eden* by John Steinbeck and *Middlesex* by Jeffrey Eugenides. Several titles from Oprah's previous book club incarnation, such as books by Toni Morrison and Barbara Kingsolver, are also titles teens should consider. Oprah's new 2.0 book club continues her passion for reading.

Narrative non-fiction and informational books can open new worlds to teens, introducing new passions and illuminating old ones. This can be particularly true in the field of science, which has a thriving market of quality titles written for the layman that include everything (*A Short History of Nearly Everything* by Bill Bryson and *The Universe in a Nutshell* by Stephen Hawking) to more specific titles on the different branches of science. Sports have produced some memorable and quality titles that challenge teens, like *Friday Night Lights*. So has Social Science with the classic *In Cold Blood* by Truman Capote or Ruben Martinez's *Crossing Over*. And while every student experiences history, college-bound students can receive a richer depth of understanding by reading outside the classroom, including classics such as *The Jungle* by Upton Sinclair and newer titles by Stephen Ambrose, Doris Kearns Goodwin, Ray Rapheal, and Joseph Ellis.

Despite honest effort on the part of English curriculum, it is not possible to introduce students to the wide range of poetry that exists in a core humanities canon. Students should explore poetry on their own—both classic and contemporary. Poetry Daily's website (/) is another way to introduce poetry to teens.

Being prepared to help college-bound teens find quality titles is essential to youth services. Teachers and librarians should be aware that many colleges and universities have reading lists that they expect their entering freshman to have read before entering college. Librarians should research the colleges most attended in their area, find the reading lists, and create Internet links to them. One helpful title is *Outstanding Books for the College Bound*. Published regularly by YALSA includes a plethora of wonderful titles to build breadth and depth.

Titles for the College Bound

Novels:

Bless Me Ultima by Rudoph Anaya
The Awakening by Kate Chopin
Invisible Man by Ralph Ellison
The Great Gatsby by F. Scott Fitzgerald
The Handmaid's Tale by Margaret Atwood
Their Eyes Were Watching God by Zora Neale Hurston
The Things They Carried by Tim O'Brien
Animal Farm by George Orwell
The Catcher in the Rye by J.D. Salinger
Slaughter-House Five by Kurt Vonnegut
The Joy Luck Club by Amy Tan
The Color Purple by Alice Walker
My Antonia by Willa Cather
A Farewell to Arms by Ernest Hemingway

Drama:

A Doll's House by Henrik Ibsen
Raisin in the Sun by Lorraine Hansberry
Death of a Salesman by Arthur Miller
Hamlet by Shakespeare
Waiting for Godot by Samuel Becket
Our Town by Thornton Wilder
The Glass Menagerie by Tennessee Williams

Poetry and Poets:

Beowulf
Canterbury Tales
Paradise Lost
Emily Dickenson
Pablo Naruda
Anne Sexton

Miscellaneous:

Aristotle's *Poetics*
Bible
Marx's Communist *Manifesto*

10 Most Recommended Authors*

1. William Shakespeare
2. William Falkner
3. Charles Dickens
4. Ernest Hemingway
5. Jane Austin
6. Homer
7. Mark Twain
8. Sophocles
9. Nathaniel Hawthorne
10. F. Scott Fitzgerald

*From *Arco's Reading Lists for College-Bound Students (3rd Edition)*. Ed. Doug Estell, Michele L. Satchwell, and Patricia S. Wright. Arco, 2000

Keeping Up

- Outstanding Science Tradebooks for Students K–12: <http://www.nsta.org/ostbc>
- Notable Trade Books for Young People [Social Science]: www.socialstudies.org/resources/notable
- Outstanding Books for the College Bound and Life-Long Learners: <http://www.ala.org/yalsa/booklists/obcb>
- Pierce, Valerie. *Countdown to College: 21 To Do Lists for High School*. 2nd ed., 2009
- Crawford, Amy. *Great Books for High School: A Teacher's Guide to Books that Can Change Teens' Lives*, 2004.
- Hahn, Daniel. *The Ultimate Teen Book Guide*. 2007 (from a British perspective)
- Silvey, Anita. *500 Great Books for Teens*. Houghton Mifflin, 2006

Thought Questions

- 1) How could High School teachers encourage reading with an eye upon the needs of college freshman?
- 2) How could school and public librarians encourage appropriate reading for the college-bound?

52. Cultural Literacy? The High School Canon

There are certain books that the vast majority of high school students will have read by the time they graduate. Years later they will reminisce and commiserate about the experience and find that whether they went to school in New York, California, or Texas, they have read the same titles. The high school canon includes Shakespeare, Fitzgerald, Dickens, and Steinbeck, and is supplemented by different authors in different classrooms in different states. However, there are a few titles that are expected.

It is not unusual for students across the United States to read *Romeo and Juliet* at some point in their high school career, occasionally earlier. Other Shakespeare plays common to the English classroom experience include *Julius Caesar*, *A Midsummer's Night Dream*, and *Hamlet*. Students also experience *As You Like It*, *The Taming of the Shrew*, and *Macbeth*.

While there is no federal adoption of curricular material and class titles vary from state to state, district-to-district, school-to-school, and even classroom-to-classroom, certain novels appear again and again. Popular titles in the English curriculum include *To Kill a Mockingbird* by Harper Lee, *Lord of the Flies* by William Golding, *Grapes of Wrath* and *Of Mice and Men* by John Steinbeck, *Great Expectations* by Charles Dickens, and *Fahrenheit 451* by Ray Bradbury. Adults at most cocktail parties can discuss the meaning of the green light on Daisy's dock in *The Great Gatsby* by F. Scott Fitzgerald.

In recent years high schools have attempted to address a more multicultural audience and include more contemporary works. Currently many high schools use *I Know Why the Caged Bird Sings* by Maya Angelou, *Their Eyes Were Watching God* by Zora Neale Hurston, *Bless Me, Ultima* by Rudolph Anaya, and *The Joy Luck Club* by Amy Tan. Parents who are concerned about inappropriate language often challenge these novels. Of course some classic novels written by "dead white guys" face similar challenges.

As schools scramble to address standards, districts and states have instituted summer reading lists for students to ensure that the students are exposed to classic literature and that students continue to read over the summer. Occasionally summer reading includes popular titles and young adult titles, but the fare on the lists is often similar to what students encounter in their classrooms despite ongoing debate within the English teacher's community about encouraging pleasure reading and using young adult novels. Furthermore, there is a lack of non-fiction on required reading lists. This is true of books in the classroom curriculum as well as summer reading lists.

The new Common Core Standards created by the U.S. National Governor's Conference recommends that students be more prepared to read complex texts before they enter college so that they are able to wrestle with the great ideas across many disciplines.

As youth service librarians, advocating with English teachers to include you in the creation of summer reading lists and supplemental classroom reading lists is essential. It will help you be more prepared for requests. Beyond that, as an expert in young adult literature, you are a voice for teens. Encourage list makers to include non-fiction, young adult literature, multicultural titles, and contemporary authors. Encourage teachers to expand offerings in their classrooms through literature circles and independent reading. Immerse yourself in the debate so you can speak in their terms and passionately advocate for the quality literature that teens enjoy.

Titles in the High School Canon

- *Great Expectations* by Charles Dickens
- *Of Mice and Men* by John Steinbeck
- *The Old Man and the Sea* by Ernest Hemingway
- *The Grapes of Wrath* by John Steinbeck
- *Hamlet* by Shakespeare
- *Julius Caesar* by Shakespeare
- *Lord of the Flies* by William Golding
- *Night* by Elie Weisel
- *Fahrenheit 451* by Ray Bradbury
- *Adventures of Huckleberry Finn* by Mark Twain
- *The Stranger* by Albert Camus
- *Oedipus* by Sophocles
- *To Kill a Mockingbird* by Harper Lee
- *The Great Gatsby* by F. Scott Fitzgerald

Thought Questions

1. How important is a literary canon in high school?
2. What titles do you think all high school students should read?
3. What role does summer reading play in developing a familiarity with the canon?
4. Should non-fiction be included in the high school canon?
5. What books should be added to create a more culturally diverse list?

Spotlight: Textbook Provider's Bestsellers

Top Ten Required Novels

1. *Romeo and Juliet*: Shakespeare
2. *Macbeth*: Shakespeare
3. *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn*: Mark Twain
4. *Julius Caesar*: Shakespeare
5. *To Kill a Mockingbird*: Harper Lee
6. *The Scarlet Letter*: Nathaniel Hawthorn
7. *Of Mice and Men*: John Steinbeck
8. *Hamlet*: Shakespeare
9. *The Great Gatsby*: F. Scott Fitzgerald
10. *Lord of the Flies*: William Golding

Top 5 Required Authors

1. William Shakespeare
2. John Steinbeck
3. Mark Twain
4. Charles Dickens
5. Arthur Miller

Check out:

<http://bestsellers.about.com/od/readingrecommendations/tp/SummerReading.htm>

Further Readings

- Antal, James. "Just for the fun of it: a high school is determined to make summer reading a pleasure. (What Works)." *School Library Journal*, April 2003 v. 49 i. 4 47–48.
- Gallo, Donald R. "How Classics Create an Aliterate Society." *English Journal*: Jan. 2001. 33–39.
- Sullivan, Ed. "Some Teens Prefer the Real Thing: The Case for Young Adult Nonfiction." *English Journal*: Jan. 2001. 43–47.
- Webb, Allen. "Literature from the Modern Middle East." *English Journal*, January, 2009, v. 98, no. 3, p. 80-88.
- Webb, Allen. "Digital Texts and the New Literacies." *English Journal*, January 2009v. 97 n. 1. 83–88.
- Whelan, Debra Lau. "Yo Hamlet." *School Library Journal* June, 2007 v.56 n.3 48–50
- Williams, Linda. "How I Spent my Summer Vacation . . . with School Reading Lists." *VOYA* Feb 2002, v. 24 n. 6. 416–421.
- Younker, J. Marrin. "A Classic Argument." *School Library Journal* August, 2007, 25.

53. Poetry and Full-Length Works in Verse

Poetry is a form of literature that intensifies experiences. A poem communicates emotions, ideas, and images through words that mean more than the words actually say. There are many definitions of poetry—most involve meter, rhyme, and structure. Poetry comes in many forms, and those who restrict poetry to a basic structure they are comfortable with do not understand the flexibility of the genre. One of the beauties of poetry is that it can be blended, molded, and formed to express feelings, emotions, and thoughts that other genres cannot communicate so eloquently. Poets carefully eliminate extraneous terms and select just the right word to convey the message (economy of text). The intensity and passion in poetry comes at a good time for young adults who live a life where everything surrounding them is intense and important.

Young adult readers might be inclined to avoid poetry and stories in verse for fear that they will be asked to analyze the piece. If readers can be convinced that they will not be asked to dissect every poetic element and word choice of the poet, they are more likely to turn to poetry as pleasure reading. Book talks and attractive displays created by librarians and teachers can help greatly in promoting both poetry and full-length works told in verse. Reading aloud poetry spontaneously provides appreciation and familiarity with the genre.

Verse Novels in the Classroom

Ever since Karen Hesse's verse novel, *Out of the Dust*, earned the Newbery Award in 1998, a number of verse novels have made their way into the lexicon of young adult literature. The verse novel is a contemporary genre that evokes the power of a rich narrative with the power of verse. Verse novels range from ordinary with little plot to beautifully crafted novels with a strong sense of voice and plot. Verse "novels" range from historical pieces such as Paul B. Janeczko's *Worlds Afire* (2007) to biographies such as Marilyn Nelson's *Carver: A Life in Poems* (2001) or to *A Bad Boy Can Be Good for a Girl* (2006), a problem novel by Tanya Lee Stone.

Successful verse novels have a narrative structure similar to a prose novel: they both have changing perspectives and a series of short sections. Verse novels often employ multiple narrators that provide a wide view of the inner workings of a character's mind. Verse novels are an effective way to introduce poetry into the lives of readers. Poems work well in a small group and provide an opportunity for performance work. Verse novels can also effectively stimulate the writing of poetry.

Prose & Poetry Connections

Using poetry as the lure to bring readers to longer books of poetry, to traditional fiction, or to suggest research topics is often a successful venture. After reading Dudley Randall's "The Ballad of Birmingham," a poem about the church bombing in that city during the civil rights movement, Christopher Paul Curtis changed the destination in *The Watsons Go to Birmingham—1965* from Florida to Birmingham. The book earned a Newbery honor and a Coretta Scott King honor award. Randall's poem might be just the piece to introduce Curtis's book.

One target audience for novels in verse appeal is the group of young people who love rap. Already comfortable with verse, a rapper is often searching for alternative formats of poetry. Capitalize on this connection by suggesting poems as a source for performance works. Establish a forum for an afternoon of poetry readings/raps.

Poetry Blasts, Jams, and Slams

A Poetry Blast could become a popular forum for sharing poetry, could provide a forum for performance, and could encourage reading of all types. Marilyn Singer surveyed several of her poet friends to get their suggestions connecting young readers to poetry. Her article "Knock Poetry Off the Pedestal Its Time to Make Poems a Part of Children's Everyday Lives" is available at bit.ly/poem_pedestal. You may also read Marilyn's suggestions for establishing a Poetry Blast at marilysinger.net/onwriting/a-blast-of-poetry/. On May 12, 2009, First Lady Michelle Obama and the President hosted the first "Poetry Jam" at the White House. Several YouTube videos have been

posted showing some of the poets from 2009 through the present year’s poetry jam. Poets and playwrights, actors and musicians gathered to share the spoken word. Investigate who participated and what poetry and music was shared. Hold a poetry blast/jam in your school/library and consider sharing similar selections/poets. A poetry slam has an element of competition, much like the reality competition shows such as *American Idol* or *America’s Got Talent*. Young adults may enjoy that type of event as well.

Poetry—A Selected List

- Carlson, Lori Marie. *Red Hot Salsa: Bilingual Poems on Being Young and Latino in the United States*. (2005)
- Franco, Betsy. *Falling Hard: 100 Love Poems by Teenagers*. (2008)
- George, Kristine O’Connell. *Swimming Upstream: Middle School Poems*. (2002); *Hummingbird Nest: A Journal of Poems*. (2004)
- Grandits, John. *Blue Lipstick: Concrete Poems*. (2007); *Technically, It’s Not My Fault: Concrete Poems*. (2004)
- Grimes, Nikki, ed. *Planet Middle School*. (2011)
- Chaltas, Thalia. *Because I am Furniture*. (2009)
- Collins, Billy. *Ballistics*. (2008)
- Hopkins, Lee Bennett, ed. *America at War: Poems Selected by Lee Bennett Hopkins* (2008); *Amazing Faces*. (2010)
- Janeczko, Paul B. *Requiem: Poems of the Terezin Ghetto*. (2011); *I Feel a Little Jumpy Around You*, edited with Naomi Shihab Nye. (2011)
- Mora, Pat. *My Own True Name: New and Selected Poems for Young Adults, 1984-1999*. (2000); *Dizzy in Your Eyes: Poems About Love*. (2010)
- Nye, Naomi Shihab. *You and Yours*. (2008); *I Feel a Little Jumpy Around You*, edited with Paul Janeczko. (2011)
- Sidman, Joyce. *Dark Emperor and Other Poems of the Night*. (2010)
- Szymborska, Wislawa. *Monologue of a Dog*. (2005)
- Uhler, Joyce Sandra. *Mysterious Light: Poems, Colorful, and Transparent*. (2010)
- Waters, Fiona. *Poems From Many Cultures: Poetry Collection 4*. (2002)

A Selected List of Full-Verse Narratives

- Adoff, Jamie. *Jimi & Me*. (2005); *The Death of Jayson Porter*. (2008)
- Chaltas, Thalia. *Because I Am Furniture*. (2009)
- Creech, Sharon. *Love That Dog*. (2001); *Hate That Cat*. (2008)
- Engle, Margarita. *The Firefly Letters: A Suffragette’s Journey to Cuba*. (2010)
- Fehler, Gene. *Beanball*. (2008)
- Frost, Helen. *Keesha’s House*. (2003; 2007); *The Braid*. (2006); *Diamond Willow*. (2008)
- Fullerton, Alma. *Walking on Glass*. (2007); *Libertad*. (2008)
- Herrick, Steven. *A Place Like This*. (1998); *Do-Wrong Ron*. (2005)
- High, Linda Oatman. *Sister Slam and the Poetic Motormouth Road Trip*. (2004); *Planet Pregnancy*. (2008)
- Lee Wong, Joyce. *Seeing Emily*. (2005)
- Nelson, Marilyn. *Carver: A Life in Poems*. (2001); *A Wreath for Emmett Till*. (2005); *Miss Crandall’s School for Young Ladies & Little Misses of Color*. (with Elisabeth Alexander, 2007)
- Sones, Sonya. *What My Girlfriend Doesn’t Know*. (2007)
- Stone, Tanya Lee. *A Bad Boy Can Be Good for a Girl*. (2006)
- Van Arsdale, Carol. *Three Rivers Rising*. (2010)
- Wild, Margaret. *Jinx*. (2002); *One Night*. (2004)

For bibliographies of verse novels, check out these sites:

- Dover (NH) Public Library — <http://www.dover.lib.nh.us/teenpage/novelsverse.htm>
- Austin (TX) Public Library “Wired for Youth” — <http://www.wiredforyouth.com/books/index.cfm?booklist=verse>

- Adolescent literacy (adlit.org) — <http://www.adlit.org/books/c812/>
- Carnegie Library — <http://www.carnegielibrary.org/teens/books/showbooklist.cfm?catid=6&list=novelsinverse>
- Rochester Hills Public Library, Rochester, Michigan — <http://www.rhpl.org/books-a-more/good-reads/teen-good-reads/novels-in-verse>

Focus Book

A Kick in the Head: An Everyday Guide to Poetic Forms, edited by Paul B. Janeczko with illustrations by Chris Raschka (2004).

Although in picture-book format, this book will be a valuable aid in introducing 29 poetic forms to teen readers. Examples of elusive forms as the aubade (Eleanor Farjeon), elegy (X.J. Kennedy), couplet (Ogden Nash), pantoum (Liz Rosenberg), and sonnets (Shakespeare) are included, along with twenty-four other forms.

From the same collaborators: *A Poke in the I: A Collection of Concrete Poems*. (2001) and *A Foot in the Mouth: Poems to Speak, Sing and Shout*. (2009)

Want a little help in igniting excitement for poetry among your students? Seek out Paul Janeczko's 2011 title for professionals — *Where A Poem Belongs Is Here: Cultivating Passion for Poetry in the Middle Grades*.

Educators of high school students will find some great ideas to adapt.

Poets to Investigate

Jaime Adoff	Betsy Franco
Mary Jo Bang	Robin Hirsch
Billy Collins	Paul B. Janeczko
Cornelius Eady	Sonya Sones

Novel or Poem?

Make an attractive three-part display of favorite prose novels, poetry collections/anthologies, and verse novels. Put the traditional novels on one side and label them as such. Put the poetry on the other end and label. In the middle display some popular verse novels and ask: Novel or Poem? Include a "voting" sheet to allow readers to decide which category best fits the verse novel.

Spotlight: Paul Janeczko

Paul Janeczko learned to love poetry as a college student, and when he became an English teacher he shared his love of poetry with his students. After twenty-two years as a teacher, he resigned to become a full-time writer. He is an anthologist and a poet. He has collected favorite books, written poetry, created a full-length poetic narrative, and interviewed other poets. Watch for Janeczko's new novel length book of poems — check his website at www.pauljaneczko.com.

- *Requiem: Poems of the Terezin Ghetto* (2011)
- *Blushing: Expressions of Love in Poems and Letters*. (2004)
- *Dirty Laundry Pile: Poems in Different Voices*. Illustrated by Melissa Sweet (2001)
- *Looking for Your Name: A Collection of Contemporary Poems*. (1993)
- *Seeing the Blue Between: Advice and Inspiration for Young Poets*. (2002)
- *Worlds Afire: The Hartford Circus Fire of 1944*. (2004)
- *Birds on a Wire: A Renga 'round Town* with J. Patrick Lewis and illustrated by Gary Lippincott (2008)

Poet Laureate

The United States has had a poet laureate since 1937 (called a "poetry consultant" prior to 1985), which is appointed by the Librarian of Congress in October for a one-year term. Research the poets who have served in this capacity and identify some that have a connection to young adult readers. We have had a children's poet laureate since 2007 (Jack Prelutsky 2007–2008; Mary Ann Hoberman 2009–2010; J. Patrick Lewis 2011–2013). If a young adult's poet laureate were to be named in the United States, who would be five poets that should be among the top poets considered for this position? Should we have a YA poet laureate?

Thought Questions

- 1) Develop an idea for introducing a poet and his/her poetry into a curricular unit.
- 2) What is the best way to interest young adult readers in poetry?
- 3) What strategies will make young adults more receptive to poetry?

54. Adult Books and the Teenage Reader

Teachers and librarians should not be surprised at the number of adult titles teens consume. Their interaction with the popular culture and movies often leads them to adult titles from the bestseller lists. Personal interests such as computers, astronomy, automobiles, or sports lead teens to adult titles. The lines between adult and teens when it comes to non-fiction is fairly thin. Interest in adult topics will require both teachers and librarians to connect teens with information sources from the web to adult collections in public and academic libraries and the selection of materials for adults that have been included in larger school library collections. The bestselling lists in the *New York Times* and *USA Today* are beginning sources. While these lists are marketing tools, teens will encounter them and ask for selected titles by their favorite authors.

The challenge may be the reading level of these materials, but teens with high interest and motivation will learn to read far above their normal reading level. A keen eye for readable and attractive adult editions will often attract a teen reader. For example, there are many titles published by Dorling Kindersley with well-formatted texts and illustrations that can be the gateway into adult topics for teens with limited reading ability or language problems. Regular questioning of teens about their personal interest will provide insights into the types of materials in the adult world that teens would enjoy. Interests often allow readers to rise above their reading level.

The Young Adult Library Services Association (YALSA) selects ten titles each year of adult books they consider of particular interest to teen readers. Their list is worth reviewing to see if any of the titles would be of interest to teens in your area. Titles on the 2011 ALEX list are:

- *Big Girl Small* by Rachel DeWoskin
- *In Zanesville* by Jo Ann Beard
- *The Lover's Dictionary* by David Levithan
- *The New Kids: Big Dreams and Brave Journeys at a High School for Immigrant Teens* by Brooke Hauser
- *The Night Circus* by Erin Morgenstern
- *Ready Player One* by Ernest Cline
- *Robocalypse: A Novel* by Daniel H. Wilson
- *Salvage the Bones* by Jesmyn Ward
- *The Scrapbook of Frankie Pratt: A Novel in Pictures* by Caroline Preston
- *The Talk-Funny Girl* by Roland Merullo

An article with links to a review for each of the listed books is available on the *School Library Journal* blog, "The Alex Awards, 2012, January 24th, 2012." (Web)
blog.schoollibraryjournal.com/adult4teen/2012/01/24/the-alex-awards-2012/

Previous and future ALEX award lists are posted on the American Library Association's YALSA site: www.ala.org/yalsa/booklists/alex

Popular Best Selling List

Looking at *USA Today's* list of bestselling books (2012), there are several titles that will appeal to young adult readers including:

- *Mockingjay* by Suzanne Collins (2012)
- *Catching Fire* by Suzanne Collins (2010)
- *The Hunger Games* by Suzanne Collins (2008)

- *11th Hour* by James Patterson and Maxine Paetro (2012)
- *Explosive Eighteen* by Janet Evanovich (2011)
- *The Innocent* by David Baldacci (2012)

Genre Fiction

Westerns—The late Louis L'Amour was the king of western genre fiction. His short story collections, *The Collected Short Stories of Louis L'Amour* (Volumes One and Two), continue to be on the Western bestseller lists along with titles by Thomas Cobb, Craig Johnson, and John D. Nesbitt. Loren D. Estleman was recognized for his lifetime contributions to Western literature in 2012 with the Owen Wister Award. Current award books are listed at www.westernwriters.org

Mysteries—Mystery Writers of America (www.mysterywriters.org) is a definitive source for award-winning mystery titles. Mary Higgins Clark is one of the notable authors in this genre; she writes both adult and young adult titles. Newer titles in the mystery genre include *The Long Quiche* by Avery James, *Rage* by Gary C. King, *Last Writes* by Sheila Lowe, and *Stork Raving Mad* by Donna Andrews.

Espionage—*But I Trusted You: Ann Rule's Crime Files #14* by Ann Rule; *Triple Cross: How bin Laden's Master Spy Penetrated the CIA, the Green Berets, and the FBI* by Peter Lance; and *Dead or Alive* by Tom Clancy are among classic and current bestsellers and represent bestselling authors in this genre.

Romance—Each year the Romance Writers of America create a list of best romance books. Book finalists for each current year's award books and authors can be found on the Romance Writers of America website at www.rwanational.org. A list of the RWA 2012 Golden Heart Finalists for Young Adults is listed on their site (and in chapter 28 of this book).

Authors of Note

John Grisham—As a child in Tennessee in the 1950s, Grisham dreamed of being a professional ball player. He became an attorney instead and later served as a state representative in his home state until 1990. One of his first books came about when he overheard the compelling testimony of a young rape victim. For a number of years, Grisham arose early and wrote. His first book was *A Time to Kill* (1988). *The Firm* (1991) became a bestselling novel and the basis for a popular movie. Each year since 1988, Grisham has produced another book—all bestsellers—and seven have been turned into movies. *The Litigators* (2011) and *Calico Joe* (2012) are among Grisham's recent titles. He has also published a series of books in the Theodore Boone (Kid Lawyer Series) with Dutton Children's Books (2009–2012). Website: www.jgrisham.com

Dean Koontz—Koontz's books have been described as graphic and fast-paced with well-developed characters. His quest to become a full-time writer began when he was a senior in college and won an *Atlantic Monthly* fiction competition. After graduation from Shippensburg (Pennsylvania), he became a writing tutor with the Appalachian Poverty Program and later an English teacher in Harrisburg. His wife offered to support him for five years to give him a chance to become a self-supporting writer. Koontz's bid to become a successful writer succeeded. Ten of his novels have been #1 on the *New York Times* hardcover bestseller list. Twelve of his books have achieved that position on the paperback list. Koontz's recent books include: *Nevermore* by Dean Koontz, Keith Champagne, and Andy Smith; *Relentless*; and *Dead*

and *Alive*. He has authored the #1 bestselling Odd Thomas series. Website: www.deankoontz.com.

Michael Crichton—Michael Crichton, an author of the techno-thriller, sold over a million books in thirty-six languages, in a writing career spanning four decades. He studied medicine at Harvard, but after graduation he became a writer and filmmaker. In the 1980s he developed computer programs for the film industry and was the originator of *E.R.*, basing it on his early days as a young doctor. *Andromeda Strain* (1969) and *Jurassic Park* (1990) are popular early novels. *Pirate Latitudes* (2009)—a novel discovered after his death in 2008 along with a techno-thriller, *Micro* (2011)—has given Crichton immortality. Website: www.michaelcrichton.com

Jodi Picoult—Picoult's books are excellent examples of crossover novels. Despite being published for adults, they often feature teen characters. Picoult became a NY Times Bestseller with *My Sister's Keeper* (2004), which also was made into a movie by Warner (they also changed the ending). Other books include: *The Pact* (1998) which centers around two young teens that have a suicide pact, and the aftermath in their families. In *Plain Truth* (1999) a young Amish girl gives birth and murders her baby. In *The Tenth Circle* (2006) a young woman is raped, setting off a devastating chain of events. *Nineteen Minutes* (2007) explores the thoughts and emotions surrounding a school shooting. *Handle with Care* (2009) deals with a daughter's rare bone disease and *House Rules* (2010) deals with a teenager with Asperger's syndrome. Picoult's most recent title, *Lone Wolf*, examines medical science and its relation to moral choices. Picoult and her daughter, Sammy, have co-authored a YA/tween novel titled *Between the Lines*. Website: www.jodipicoult.com

Some ALEX Award winners remain popular with teens. Some of the more popular past winners include:

- *The Boy Who Harnessed the Wind: Creating Currents of Electricity and Hope* by William Kamkwamba and Bryan Mealer (2009)
- *Peace Like a River* by Leif Enger (2002)
- *10th Grade* by Joseph Weisberg (2003)
- *The Curious Incident of the Dog in the Nighttime* by Mark Hadden (2004)
- *Stiff* by Mary Roach (2004)
- *My Sister's Keeper* by Jodi Picoult (2005)
- *Donorboy* by Mark Halpern (2005)
- *Stitches: A Memoir*, by David Small (2009)
- *As Simple as Snow* by Greg Galloway (2006)
- *Eagle Blue: A Team, A Tribe, and a High School Basketball Season in Arctic Alaska* by Michael D'Orso (2007)
- *The Blind Side: Evolution of a Game* by Michael Lewis (2007)
- *A Long Way Gone: Memoirs of a Boy Soldier* by Beah Ishmael (2008)

□

Thought Question

Survey 20 young adult readers asking them to list the last five books they have read voluntarily (not class assignments). Then categorize the books into those considered as being written for young adults and those intended for an adult audience. What conclusions can you draw from your survey data?

55. Picture Books for Young Adults

In many libraries, picture books were for decades and still are, designated as “E” (easy) reading titles. The truth is the text in many picture books is anything but “easy” reading and some deal with topics that are sophisticated and complicated. “Everybody” might be a more useful term. There are some books designated as picture books because of format, but would not be recommended for readers under the age of 8 or 9. *Pink and Say* by Patricia Polacco, a tale from the Civil War, or *Hiroshima No, Pika!* by Toshi Maruki, a powerful book about the bombing of Hiroshima, are examples of picture books for older readers.

Picture books with a strong curriculum narrative are, for many purposes, a short story with illustrations. There are many uses for these abbreviated stories or texts in the middle school and senior high curriculum. Musical directors planning a Madrigal dinner theater might find the exact depictions of costumes that are needed in Alikì’s *Medieval Feast* (1986). Franklyn Branley’s *Journey Into a Black Hole* (1988) will be the perfect introduction to a scholarly unit on black holes. Those readers examining Christopher Columbus’s role as seen by contemporary historians will find using Jane Yolen’s *Encounter* (1996) very useful. Similarly, a unit on World War II would not be complete without introducing some of the faces of the Japanese citizens who were interned during World War II in the USA— *A Place Where Sunflowers Grow* by Amy Lee-Tai and Felicia Hoshino (2006) puts a human face on the experience.

Picture books or short stories (illustrated or not) are successfully used to:

- promote literacy across the curriculum;
- convey ideas simply;
- introduce/encourage the reading of more difficult books on the same subject;
- encourage creative writing in prose and poetry;
- promote awareness of language;
- teach artistic styles in illustrations;
- encourage the development of creativity and imagination;
- introduce a person or topic for more in-depth study;
- provide a schema for students in special education or ESL classes;
- provide models for teen parents to read to their children;
- teach elements of literature—plotting, characterization, etc.;
- provide material for reader’s theater, speech class, and so forth;
- teach literary devices: foreshadowing, flashbacks, and so forth.

Try any one of these:

Art

- Krull, Kathleen and Kathryn Hewitt. *Lives of the Artists: Masterpieces, Messes (and What the Neighbors Thought)*. (2011)—biographical anecdotes.
- Amara, Philip et.al. *So You Want to Be a Comic Book Artist? The Ultimate Guide on How to Break into Comics!* (2012)
- Novesky, Amy and Yuyi. *Georgia in Hawaii: When Georgia O’Keeffe Painted What She Pleasèd*. (2012)
- Novesky, Amy and David Diaz. *Me, Frida*. (2010)

History

- Adler, David A. *Enemies of Slavery*. Illustrated by Donald A. Smith. (2004)—Thirteen anti-slavery individuals profiled.

- Aylesworth, Jim. *Our Abe Lincoln*. (2009) — Rendition of a song sung during Lincoln's presidential campaigns. Song sung to the tune of "Old Grey Mare."
- Baretta, Gene. *Now & Ben: The Modern Inventions of Benjamin Franklin*. (2008)
- Behnke, Alison. *Chinese in America*. (2004) — History of Chinese immigration to the United States.
- Borden, Louise. *Across the Blue Pacific: A World War II Story*. Illustrated by Robert Andrew Parker. (2006) — A school class corresponds with a soldier.
- Brown, Craig. *Mule Train Mail*. (2009) — A capsule of one aspect of the life on the Havasupai Indian Reservation at the bottom of the Grand Canyon.
- Curlee, Lynn. *Ballpark: The Story of America's Baseball Fields*. (2005) — From ball parks to hot dogs.
- Currier, Katrina Saltonstall. *Kai's Journey to Gold Mountain: An Angel Island Story*. (2005) — In 1934, twelve-year-old Kai leaves China to join his father in America.
- Deedy, Carmon Agra. *14 Cows for America*. Illustrated by Thomas Gonzales. (2009) — True story of the response of a Maasai village in Kenya to the events of September 11, 2001.
- Freedman, Russell. *The Adventures of Marco Polo*. Illustrated by Bagram Ibatoulline. (2006) — Biography of Marco Polo.
- Giblin, James. *Secrets of the Sphinx*. (2004) — What, why and how of these famous Egyptian landmarks.
- Hesse, Karen. *The Cats in Krasinski Square*. Illustrated by Wendy Watson. (2004) — Two Jewish sisters, escapees of the infamous Warsaw ghetto, devise a plan to foil Gestapo plans to intercept food for starving people.
- Judge, Lita. *One Thousand Tracings: Healing the Wounds of World War II* (2007) — Fourteen poems describe a philanthropic project began after World War II, when the narrator's family sent a package to a needy German friend.
- Cheripko, Jan. *Caesar Rodney's Ride: The Story of an American Patriot*. Illustrated by Gary Lippincott. (2004) — Caesar Rodney may be responsible for our nation's birth; this book tells how.
- Littlesugar, Amy. *Willy and Max: A Holocaust Story*. (2006) — Looting of treasures in Germany during World War II; restoration to the rightful owner.
- McGill, Alice. *Molly Bannaky*. Illustrated by Chris T. Soentpiet. (1999) — Story of Benjamin Banneker's (surveyor of Washington, D.C.) grandmother and her immigration.
- McKissack, Pat. *Days of Jubilee*. (2003) — Slavery from original sources.
- Polacco, Patricia. *Butterfly*. (2004) — During the Nazi occupation of France, Monique's mother hides a Jewish family in her basement.
- Polacco, Patricia. A trio of books about the Civil War: *Pink and Say*. (1994); *January's Sparrow*. (2009); and *Just in Time, Abraham Lincoln*. (2011)
- Robinson, Anthony and Annemarie Young. *Mohammed's Journey (A Refugee Journal)*. (2011) — Born in Kirkuk, the Kurdish part of Iraq, this is Mohammed's escape from Iraq and the brutality of Saddam Hussein, to the safety of England.

Literature

- Coville, Bruce. *William Shakespeare's Twelfth Night*. Illustrated by Dennis Nolan. (pb 2003) — An adaptation of Shakespeare's classic title with Coville's own prose integrated with pivotal lines from Shakespeare's origin.
- Kimmel, Eric A. *The Hero Beowulf*. Illustrated by Leonard Everett Fisher. (2005) — A simple, brief retelling of the Anglo-Saxon epic.
- Longfellow, Henry Wadsworth. *Paul Revere's Ride: The Landlord's Tale*. Illustrated by Charles Santore. (2003) — Depicts the landlord of the Wayside Inn telling the story of Paul Revere's Ride.
- Rosen, Michael. *Shakespeare's Romeo & Juliet*. Illustrated by Jane Ray. (2003) — Scene by scene account; act and scene references.

- Smith, Lane. *It's a book*. (2010) — a tongue-in-cheek battle between the old fashioned “book” and the newest technology.
- Walker, Alice. *Why War Is Never a Good Idea*. (2008) — Poetry grieving the impact of war.

Science

- Appelt, Kathi. *Miss Lady Bird's Wildflowers: America's Environmental First Lady*. Illustrated by Joy Fisher Hein. (2005) — A biography of Lady Bird Johnson.
- Arnold, Caroline. *The Skeletal System*. (2004) — Biology.
- Nivola, Claire A. *Planting the Trees: The Story of Wangani Maathai*. (2008) — Making a difference.
- Pringle, Laurence. *Snakes! Strange and Wonderful*. Illustrated by Meryl Henderson. (2004) — Interesting new details; for fans of Animal Kingdom shows.
- Bardoe, Cheryl. *Gregor Mendel: The Friar Who Grew Peas*. (2006) — Genetics, great diagrams.
- Martin, Jacqueline Briggs. *The Chiru of High Tibet*. (2010) — Endangered animals.

General Topics

- Ahlberg, Alan. *Previously*. (2008)
- Bang, Molly. *Common Ground: The Water, Earth, And Air We Share*. (1997) — The natural resources we share.
- Barasch, Lynn. *Knockin' on Wood*. (2004) — An inspirational biography of Clayton “Peg Leg” Bates (1907–1998) who lost a leg at age 12 and went on to become a world-renowned tap dancer.
- Cutler, Jane. *Cello of Mr. O*. (2000) — Cost of war.
- Gold, Julie. *From a Distance*. (2000) — Anti-war song.
- Love, D. Anne. *Of Numbers and Stars: The Story of Hypatia*. Illustrated by Pam Paparone. (2006) — Biography of Hypatia, a Greek scholar, philosopher, writer, and teacher. Math.
- Scieszka, Jon. *Math Curse*. Illus. by Lane Smith. (1995) — Math, prime numbers.
- Shulevitz, Uri. *How I Learned Geography*. (2008) — An unforgettable person story.
- Stevenson, Harvy. *Looking at Liberty*. (2003) — A look at the grand lady in New York Harbor.

Keeping Up

- Hall, Susan J. (2001) *Using Picture Storybooks to Teach Literary Devices: Recommended Books for Children and Young Adults* Volume 3 (Using Picture Books to Teach) Oryx. Volume 1: 1990; Volume 2: 1998.
- Children's Literature: Independent Information and Reviews. “Themed Reviews: Picture Books for Older Readers.” (n.d.)
www.childrenslit.com/childrenslit/th_picbkolder.html
- McElmeel, Sharron L. (2009) *Picture That! From Mendel to Normandy: Picture Books and Ideas, Curriculum and Connections — for Tweens and Teens*. — Includes connecting ideas for a multitude of titles, in classrooms and libraries, with older readers. Annotations, quick lists, and many strategies for use.

Spotlight on *The Chiru of High Tibet*

The Chiru are an endangered species, and when environmentalist George Shaller discovered their plight, he set out to save them. Soon four mountain men were setting out to find the calving grounds, so that the grounds could be designated as a reserve. No one else had succeeded. *The Chiru of High Tibet* is their story, recounted by Jacqueline Briggs Martin (with illustrations by Linda S. Wiggerter) (2010). Visit the author's website for more information
www.jacquelinebriggsmartin.com

Thought Question

It takes experience to know what picture books and illustrated stories to use with teens. What tips can you gather from other teachers and librarians to match reader with text and to curriculum?

56. Making Connections: Young Adult Literature in the Classroom

The majority of the titles that make up the high school canon are “classics” originally written for an adult audience. Teens can find these titles difficult to read, difficult to relate to, and “over-taught.” A common complaint about English class among teens is that the over-analysis of texts can often ruin the enjoyment of the book, compounded by the “right answer” for which they feel responsible. This environment can undermine the joy of reading, and teens will come to view reading as a chore rather than a pleasurable activity. One way to combat the difficulties of teaching literature to teens is to find ways to incorporate young adult (YA) literature into the English classroom to support and enhance current curriculum.

There are a number of ways to introduce YA literature to a classroom in a manner that supports the curriculum: individual reading of titles that are thematically consistent with the class novel, whole class reading of a YA novel that illuminates the themes either before or during the reading of a “classic,” or a teacher can opt to teach only the Young Adult novel to cover the topics, genres and themes the classic would have covered. These techniques are particularly helpful for struggling readers but can be successful with capable and avid readers as well.

There is, however, a basic debate question that surrounds the inclusion of young adult literature in the classroom that should be considered by those involved in reading instruction: the librarian, the English department, reading specialists, and resource teachers. What is the responsibility to impart cultural knowledge? Is there a canon that high school students should experience? What is the responsibility of English teachers to build avid life-long readers? Does teaching the “high school canon” interfere with teens developing an avid reading habit? There is theory and research that support the idea that young adult literature should be used in the classroom, and there is a call for cultural literacy. The debate is ongoing in *English Journal* (<http://www.ncte.org/journals/ej>), a journal published by National Council of Teachers of English and is worth in-depth exploration.

As an advocate of young adult literature in the classroom, you should be prepared to answer the question of quality, which may be the fallback position of those reluctant to use YA literature. There is, of course, quality YA materials that covers all genres and has multiple narrators and fluid timelines. There are YA novels written in second person and with the omniscient third person

▫ Debate: Young Adult Lit vs. the Classics

This is a topic that has been debated and discussed, and there seems to be no consensus in sight. Inform yourself and be ready to defend your position.

Read:

- Hardy, Lawrence. “The Loss of Literature.” *American School Board Journal*. Dec., 2004. Vol. 191 Issue 12, p13–17.
- Themed Issue: *English Journal*, Vol. 90, Number 3, January, 2001. Young Adult Literature: The Problem with YA Literature
- Gibbons, L.C. and Dail, J.S. and Stallworth, B. J. “Young Adult Literature in the English Curriculum Today: Classroom Teachers Speak Out.” *The ALAN Review*, Summer, 2006. <http://scholar.lib.vt.edu/ejournals/ALAN/v33n3/gibbons.pdf>
- *From Hinton to Hamlet: Building Bridges Between Young Adult Literature and the Classics, Second Edition, Revised and Expanded* by Sarah K. Herz and Don Gallo. Greenwood Press, 2005.

narrator. It is a mistake to base one's opinion of YA literature on the series romances many teachers experienced in the '80s and early '90s. As an advocate for young adult literature, seek out and recommend quality YA materials that meet the curricular needs of teachers and the developmental needs of teens. Keep current with the professional issues of NCTE (<http://www.ncte.org/>) and local English organizations so that you can use experts from those organizations to support YA literature in the classroom.

Connections do not have to be thematic; they can be made based on archetypes in literature, such as the hero's journey, the fall from Eden, or good versus evil. They can also be based on time periods: stories that illuminate the Great Depression, such as *Out of the Dust* by Karen Hesse, can be used to supplement *The Grapes of Wrath*, or non-fiction titles, such as *Witchbunt: Mysteries of the Salem Witch Trials* by Marc Aronson, can help illuminate *The Crucible* by Arthur Miller. Connections can be further made across disciplines. History and Social Science have obvious connections, such as *Catherine, Called Birdy* (Cushman, 1994) for the Middle Ages and Ann Rinaldi's historical titles. However, titles for science, such as *California Blue* (Klass, 1994) and *Double Helix* (Werlin, 2004), can also be used. Math, health and physical education, and the Arts can all benefit from literary connections. There are a number of creative ways to incorporate YA literature in a classroom, so be on the lookout for new titles and methods to do so.

Spotlight: The Canon and Connections

Theme: Journey

Classics:

The Odyssey
The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn
The Grapes of Wrath

YA Connectors:

Downriver—Will Hobbs (1991)
Walk Two Moons—Sharon Creech (1994)
Rules of the Road—Joan Bauer (1998)
Trouble—Gary D. Schmidt (2008)
In the Space Left Behind—Joan Ackermann (2008)

Theme: The Brotherhood of Man (Or Not)

Classics:

Of Mice and Men
Lord of the Flies
To Kill a Mockingbird

YA Connectors:

Whale Talk—Chris Crutcher (2001)
What Happened to Cass McBride—Gail Giles (2006)

Theme: The Lure of Wealth

Classics:

Great Expectations
The Great Gatsby

YA Connectors:

Love Among the Walnuts—Jean Ferris (1998)
Big Slick—Eric Luper (2007)

Theme: Big Brother

Classics:

Animal Farm
Brave New World

YA Connectors:

The Gospel According to Larry—Janet Tashjian (2001)
The Giver—Lois Lowry (1993)
Feed—M.T. Anderson (2002)
Little Brother—Cory Doctorow (2008)

□

Thought Questions

- 1) What is the role of the library in creating avid, life-long readers?
- 2) How can teachers connect with both school and public librarians to explore new connections between the high school canon and young adult materials?

Section III

Issues to Consider in Young Adult Literature and Multimedia

This section contains just a few of the important issues connected with the world of teenage literature and multimedia. During the last twenty years, the publishing industry has become sensitive to the representation of the many voices represented in American culture. But there seems to be a long way to go as groups, such as Native Americans, Hispanics, Asian, and peoples from the Islamic worlds, seem to be underrepresented. Sadly, in our “pluralistic” society censorship is still alive and well as various groups try to impose their view of the world on everyone else. Finally, we end the section with a few recommendations on programming for young adults.

57. Multicultural Concerns

There is probably not one educator who doesn't have some concern for how various ethnic and minority groups are portrayed in literature. With almost 50% of the school population being identified as being of one ethnic minority or another, this concern becomes even more important. But dealing with multiculturalism is another matter. In many people's minds, the term *multicultural* translates into African American. In the past few years, more attention has come to the Asian and Hispanic cultures, and increasingly amounts of attention is now being paid to Native Americans and cultural and religious minorities.

In an article Ashley Bryan, a noted African American author and illustrator, once wrote for the Children's Book Council, he discussed the emergence of literature that acknowledged minority cultures. In that article, Bryan said, "Children can now see their images in illustrated books and in stories of their people. They make a direct connection to these pictures and stories." ("Ashley Bryan: Discovering Ethnicity Through Children's Books." *CBC Magazine: The Children's Book Council*. 2006.) While images of many cultures are being shown in picture books and middle-grade books and young adult novels are including a diversity of characters in greater numbers, those images and portrayals are often unflattering or deemed stereotypic by the groups portrayed. For example, visit a site created by a Native American organization whose mission is to ensure that the lives of Native American Indians are portrayed accurately and respectfully in literature. Their site (www.oyate.org) includes sections that provide resources for selecting books and for books to avoid. Their commentaries are very direct and cause one to question and to think about selection policies and how books impact readers.

Interestingly, it seems that most young adult novelists assume that readers view all characters as white and tend to identify only those characters who have a different ethnic or cultural background. One author that does not do that is Christopher Paul Curtis; he assumes his characters are African American and identifies characters as white. In Cynthia Leitich Smith's *Rain is Not My Indian Name*, readers might assume that Rain's best friend, Galen, is Native American. If they do they will be surprised in the middle of the novel.

Both teachers and librarians should be aware of the growing number of multi-racial teens in our society that do not identify with a particular racial or ethnic background but consider themselves just plain American. The most famous example, of course, is Tiger Woods. Many cultures would like to claim him as their own, but he has generally refused to identify with one group or another. On the other hand Barack Obama is generally identified as African American, but his mother was white, a native of Kansas. Adults need not pressure teens into choosing a cultural or ethnic background either in conversation with them or in the books recommended for them to read.

In the field of children and young adult literature circles, there is a fierce debate about who should be able to write and illustrate about a particular culture. Is it acceptable, and more importantly is the story credible, for a non-African American to write a story where the chief protagonist is African American? Can a non-Native American write of growing up in an Indian boarding school? Can a Christian writer write of teenagers growing up in a Jewish household? In a *School Library Journal* article (Anderson, Laurie Halse. "The Writing of Fever 1793." *School Library Journal*. May 2001. Volume 47, p 44.) Laurie Halse Anderson said, "In some ways, writing historical fiction is like writing outside of one's culture. The author must be scrupulous about detail and motivation, sensitive to cultural (and time) differences, wary of interpretation, and conscious of the reader's background and ability." Anderson is correct about historical fiction and in regard to authors who write outside of their culture. Authors

who do write outside of their culture must be absolutely scrupulous about details, show extreme sensitivity to the cultural nuances and interpretations, and always remain conscious of the perspective of those about whom they write.

A new term being used recently refers to “intercultural literacy.” Watch for this term and how it interplays with information about multicultural literacy.

Write About What You Care About

In the late 1980s and early 1990s, a large debate occurred in writing circles. The push for including a diversity of literature was in full force, but minority authors and illustrators were not being published in numbers sufficient enough to meet the demand. Writers “writing outside of their culture” were filling the void. Some decried the practice by saying that books written by someone who did not understand the culture intimately could not be authentic or valid, and, more importantly, non-minority authors were taking the place of minority writers. Critics suggested that editors (who belong to the majority culture) did not really understand the minority cultures themselves and thus did not view stories from minority writers as fitting into the mainstream market. The author of books for children and young adults involving many Black or Hispanic characters, Ann Cameron, a Caucasian from the Midwestern United States, countered this concept very well in an article written for *School Library Journal* (Cameron, Ann. “Write What You Care About.” *School Library Journal*. June 1989. Volume 35, issue 10, p 50, 2p.) In that article she says, “To think that a book lacks validity because someone of the ‘wrong’ ethnic group wrote it perpetuates racism.” She makes a compelling case for writing about what one cares about, suggesting that writing about only what one knows stifles the writer and would surely have prohibited some of our great classics. Many great books — authentic and credible despite being written by authors who were not writing of situations in their own culture — would have been deprived to readers.

Resources for Understanding and Keeping Up with Multicultural Concerns

- Critical Issue: Addressing Literacy Needs in Culturally and Linguistically Diverse Classrooms (WEB)
www.ncrel.org/sdrs/areas/issues/content/cntareas/reading/li400.htm
- *Across Cultures: A Guide to Multicultural Literature* by Kathy East and Rebecca Thomas (Libraries Unlimited, 2007)
- Cooperative Children’s Book Center (CCBC). “Multicultural Literature.” (WEB)
www.education.wisc.edu/ccbc/books/multicultural.asp
- Debbie Reese’s *American Indians in Children’s Literature Blog* at:
americanindiansinchildrensliterature.blogspot.com/ — Debbie Reese (Nambe Pueblo) provides a critical thoughts on children’s and young adult literature
- Gates, Pamela S. *Cultural Journeys: Multicultural Literature for Children and Young Adults*. 2006
- Margolis, Rick. “Whitewashed.” *School Library Journal*. April 2000, Vol. 46 Issue 4, p18.
- McElmeel, Sharron L. “Good Intentions Are Not Enough.” *Library Media Connection*, Nov/Dec 2004, Vol. 23 Issue 3, p28. (WEB)
www.mcelmeel.com/writing/goodintentions.html
- Moore, David W. Serving Culturally and Linguistically Diverse Youth, *Journal of Adolescent and Adult Literacy*, March, 2011, v. 54, n. 6, p. 455-57.
- Pirofsky, Kira Isak. “Multicultural Literature and the Children’s Literary Canon: Abstract.” *Research Room: EdChange Multicultural Pavilion*.
www.edchange.org/multicultural/papers/literature.html

- Welcome to Oyate: www.oyate.org— This site will kept you up to date on criteria and considerations in regard to Native American literature.
- Zapata, Anmgie. “Movement in Literacy: New Directions in Multilingual, Multicultural, Multinational, and Multimodal Literacy Studies,” *Language Arts*, (March, 2011), v. 88, no 4, p 310-14.

⋮

Spotlight

In the late 1980s the now inactive Council on Interracial Books for Children developed a list of 10 Quick Ways to Analyze Children’s Books (including young adult books) for Racism and Sexism. The list includes such things as:

- Consider the effect on a child’s self-image
- Weigh the relationships between people
- Watch for loaded words
- Check the copyright date

The complete list is found at:
www.teachingforchange.org/node/101

A good summary of the criteria is included in an article “Beyond Good Intentions: Selecting Multicultural Literature” by Joy Shiohita, originally published in September–October 1997 Children’s Advocate news magazine published by Action Alliance for Children. Available online at: leeandlow.com/p/administrators_joyarticle.mhtml

□

Thought Activity

Locate Ann Cameron’s *School Library Journal* article (available from the EBSCO database). Read it and comment. Do you think writers who write outside of their culture are as credible as writers who write of events and people within their own culture and ethnic experience?

Thought Questions

- 1) Are only Native Americans qualified to write books with Native American characters and Native American themes?
- 2) What would the status of books for children be today if Ezra Jack Keats (a Caucasian) had not illustrated *A Snowy Day* (1963) with a Black child, Peter?
- 3) What was Virginia Hamilton’s contribution to the world of young adult literature? Christopher Paul Curtis? Alexie Sherman? Joseph Bruchac? Lawrence Yep? Gary Soto?
- 4) Survey four biography shelves (or another section) in your school or public library. Tally how many books feature men or women; Caucasian, Black, Native American, Hispanic, and so forth; historical figures or present day subjects. Is one category over-represented? And if so, why?

58. Censorship Issues

The schools of America operate under a policy of *in loco parentis*, meaning that school teachers, administrators, and librarians are the “parents” of children and teens while under their direction. To keep children and teens safe, schools often have closed campuses, declare drug- and alcohol-free zones, require visitors to register at the office, ban guns and other weapons, and put filters on Internet connectivity to lessen exposure to pornography, predators, and blatant propaganda produced by both large corporations and terrorists. Such safety measures come into conflict at times with the principles of free speech or the supposed right of teenagers to consume any types of information they wish. Both teachers and librarians, according to the courts, must take into consideration the standards of their communities for such things as decency and teen rights to controversial or pornographic information. For the most part, objections to information in our society center on foul language, politics, or sexual messages, and schools tend to respond to the wishes of parents in their communities. To do so, schools generally set up policy statements approved by a board of education laying out a defensible position with respect to controversial materials.

Schools, in general, must operate within the scope of established policies and procedures. Specifically, policies and procedures should also guide the activities of the library media collection program and the selection and use of materials in the classroom. Selection policy and considerations for library collections will vary somewhat from the policy for identifying materials to “teach” in the classroom, but many of the same considerations are important. Policies address the ideals and generalities, and the procedure statement explains how those policies should be implemented, i.e. the daily activities that are necessary to meet the ideals and generalities. In most cases the policy and procedure documents are separate publications—the policy statement for general distribution and publication while the procedure statements are internal documents meant to be the working guidelines for the organization or library/classroom. Having a board-approved selection policy (and procedures that support the implementation of policy) may help avert concerns with book censors, copyright infringement, and collection bias.

Libraries should have a clear selection policy, but should also have a de-selection/acquisition policy, a policy on gift acceptance, and a reconsideration policy. The procedure accompanying the reconsideration policy will be extremely important, as those citizens asking for the reconsideration of an item in your library/classroom should have a clear procedure to make that request. That will generally entail having a reconsideration form for citizens to make that formal request. Sample forms are available at: eduscapes.com/seeds/management/censor.html

Public libraries will generally have different policies than school libraries in areas of controversy. Public libraries are more diverse and serve the entire community. Thus they have more diverse collections and defend them in the words of one public librarian: “We have something that will offend everyone.” Public libraries are freer to do this because they are free of the burden of *in loco parentis*. Teachers, school librarians, and public librarians should engage in a discussion of controversial materials, their defense or reconsideration, and what constitutes ways to protect young people while encouraging them to learn how to live and work in a free society.

Of increasing discussion is the prevention of access to Web 2.0 tools based on the fear that young people will use these tools as gateways to dangerous materials. Some have said that this constitutes a new frontier in intellectual freedom.

ALA, Intellectual Freedom, and Banned Book Week

The American Library Association (ALA) and its members are fierce defenders of the right of citizens to choose their own reading material. Their site provides many resources for those librarians and educators facing challenges to materials that they have deemed as appropriate to their clientele. Visit their site at www.ala.org

The ALA has an Office of Intellectual Freedom that is charged with implementing the goals embodied in the organization's *Library Bill of Rights* online at www.ala.org/advocacy/intfreedom/librarybill. Each year the ALA sponsors Banned Book Week to highlight the rights of readers. Resources and suggestions for celebrating the freedom to read are included on the Banned Books Week pages at: www.ala.org/ala/issuesadvocacy/banned/bannedbooksweek/ideasandresources/activity_ideas/index.cfm

Every school and every library should have an established procedure for responding to requests for the reconsideration of materials selected for the library or classroom use. Here are some sites that have valuable information regarding this issue.

- Pikes Peak Library District's Challenged Materials Policy: www.ppld.org/challenged-materials-policy
- Annette Lamb and Larry Johnson's website at: eduscapes.com/seeds/management/censor.html
- The Right to Read—an ERIC Document at: www.ericdigests.org/pre-9215/library.htm

A Few Common Sense Suggestions for Controversial Materials

1. Get parent permission for reading or viewing materials that might be termed controversial.
2. Provide alternatives for teens that are not allowed to read, view, or listen to certain materials.
3. Erase circulation records immediately when materials are returned to library collections.
4. Alert teens that search histories of the Internet are easily recovered by snoopers of any stripe.
5. Teach teens to deal with uncomfortable situations in cyberspace, including behavior in chat rooms, giving out personal information, getting involved in scams, and avoiding predators.
6. All teens will encounter messages with which they are uncomfortable. Teach them to click out or notify adults of the problems they encounter.

Top 10 Challenged Authors

2011:

1. Lauren Myracle
2. Kim Dong Hwa
3. Chris Crutcher
4. Carolyn Mackler
5. Robert Greene
6. Sonya Sones
7. Dori Hillestad Butler
8. Sherman Alexie
9. Suzanne Collins
10. Aldous Huxley

2010:

1. Ellen Hopkins
2. Peter Parnell and Justin Richardson
3. Sonya Sones
4. Judy Blume
5. Ann Brashers
6. Suzanne Collins
7. Aldous Huxley
8. Sherman Alexie
9. Laurie Halse Anderson
10. Natasha Friend

2009:

1. Lauren Myracle
2. Alex Sanchez
3. P.C. Cast
4. Robert Cormier
5. Peter Parnell and Justin Richardson
6. Stephen Chbosky
7. Chris Crutcher
8. Ellen Hopkins
9. Richelle Mead
10. John Steinbeck

Earlier and more recent lists are available on the American Library Association's website:
www.ala.org/ala/issuesadvocacy/banned/frequentlychallenged/challengedauthors/index.cfm

Spotlight: Chris Crutcher—A Censored Author

For a perspective of censorship from an author's viewpoint, don't miss Chris Crutcher's comments on his site

(www.chriscrutcher.com/censorship.html).

Crutcher is an oft-censored author and says, "While I agree that 'selection' is a wonderfully convenient term for 'censorship' it doesn't change the intent."

Top 10 Most Frequently Challenged Books of 2011

1. *ttyl; ttfn; l8r; g8r* (series), by Lauren Myracle — Reasons: offensive language; religious viewpoint; sexually explicit; unsuited to age group
2. *The Color of Earth* (series), by Kim Dong Hwa — Reasons: nudity; sex education; sexually explicit; unsuited to age group
3. *The Hunger Games* trilogy, by Suzanne Collins — Reasons: anti-ethnic; anti-family; insensitivity; offensive language; occult/satanic; violence
4. *My Mom's Having A Baby! A Kid's Month-by-Month Guide to Pregnancy*, by Dori Hillestad Butler — Reasons: nudity; sex education; sexually explicit; unsuited to age group
5. *The Absolutely True Diary of a Part-Time Indian*, by Sherman Alexie — Reasons: offensive language; racism; religious viewpoint; sexually explicit; unsuited to age group
6. *Alice* (series), by Phyllis Reynolds Naylor — Reasons: nudity; offensive language; religious viewpoint
7. *Brave New World*, by Aldous Huxley — Reasons: insensitivity; nudity; racism; religious viewpoint; sexually explicit
8. *What My Mother Doesn't Know*, by Sonya Sones — Reasons: nudity; offensive language; sexually explicit
9. *Gossip Girl* (series), by Cecily Von Ziegesar — Reasons: drugs; offensive language; sexually explicit
10. *To Kill a Mockingbird*, by Harper Lee — Reasons: offensive language; racism

All annual lists from the 21st century on ALA's website at: www.ala.org/ala/issuesadvocacy/banned/frequentlychallenged/21stcenturychallenged/

59. Have You Read This Book?: Booktalking to the Teenager

Have you seen a preview at a movie and said to yourself “I can’t wait to see that”? Or heard a song on the radio that caused you to purchase an album? Or read a blurb on the back of a book and bought it? That is the power of booktalking. Booktalking is marketing books to teens, usually a captive audience. Despite recent changes in publishers’ marketing strategies for young adult literature, there is still fabulous, interesting, quality, and entertaining titles being published for teens that need word of mouth for teens to find and know about. In fact, word of mouth is the best marketing tool available for teens. You can provide word of mouth not just by selecting and displaying titles, but also by booktalking those titles to teens. But what is a booktalk? A booktalk is an advertisement for a book. A good talk gives a sense of characters, plot, setting, and the tone of a book. As a formalized version of reader’s advisory, it is a performance. Booktalks are short presentations (no longer than five minutes) to an audience about books designed to encourage teens to read. Booktalks are the product of the presenter, not only a preview of a book, but also an introduction of the presenter and the library. Keep in mind that booktalking is **not** a review or literary criticism. It is **not** a read-aloud. It is **not** a summary of the book.

For Librarians

Booktalking has multiple benefits. For youth service workers in a public library setting, booktalking may be the ticket that gives the public librarians access to school classrooms where they can build relationships with their clientele. For school librarians, booktalking provides access to non-users as well as to independent users. Booktalking to teens puts a friendly face on the library. It makes the librarian more approachable and familiar. It allows the librarian to build relationships with teens and with the teachers (or in-charge adult). Beyond that, booktalking introduces the library collection to teens. You have spent money on a collection to serve teens, now let them know what is in that collection. Finally, booktalking allows you to model the pleasure of reading. While it might not be the best idea to gush over a title (teens don’t respond to over the top enthusiasm) it is an opportunity for teens to see reading for pleasure in action. They have a physical manifestation of a reader as a model. So beyond promoting individual titles, you are promoting the act of reading.

So now you are convinced that booktalking is a good idea, and you can convince others (teachers, supervisors) that it is a good idea. Often booktalks are the outgrowth of a teacher’s request. However, don’t be shy and offer your services. If a teacher or adult (think after-school programs such as Boys’ and Girls’ Clubs) requests a presentation, spend time with the teacher or adult planning your performance, especially the first time. Know if the students like to read or if they are struggling readers. What is the language background of the students? Are there ESL students? What books have the students read and enjoyed? How much time will be allotted and how many students will you see? What are the school’s community’s values regarding sex, violence, and bad language? Ultimately the teacher will be responsible for the content of your presentation, but it is important the readers are comfortable with the content. Often teachers will have an expectation regarding the types of material you booktalk. If they don’t, you might want a unifying element. Booktalks can be based on a theme, can fit a curricular need, can highlight a genre, or can be general and more all encompassing. Regardless, bring a variety of material: include non-fiction, fiction, and poetry if possible. You will face an audience with a wide variety of interests and needs. And, don’t forget to refer kids to ebooks accessible on various personal devices.

Teachers as Booktalkers

Librarians are not the only booktalking species on the planet. Any teacher who loves books can and should advertise their favorites to their students. Sometimes this advertisement takes the form of reading aloud either whole books or interesting chapters. At other times, the teacher can do formal booktalks as described below. Still at other times, the teacher might just suggest and hold up a book in class that the teacher enjoyed reading. Such practices let your class know that you are a model reader and expect them to be the same. Your advertisements need not carry with them the stigma of an assignment—rather model reading as enjoyment and reading for reading’s sake.

How to Booktalk

There are different ways to booktalk, and finding what works for you is key. Do not be afraid to make mistakes; that is how you learn. There are different schools of thought regarding written versus ad-libbed booktalks. If you prepare by writing your talk you have a fallback if you lose your place. On the other hand, ad-libbed booktalks may seem more natural. Either way, practice is important. When preparing your presentation, there are some key things to keep in mind. Keep your booktalk short and sweet. The opening is important—it is how you grab the attention of a classroom or group of teens. Look for a hook: a quote, a question, an exciting piece of action. The body of the talk should be a simple narrative that helps set the tone. It is acceptable to read from the book, but not too excessively. It should be enough to give the teens the idea of authorial voice. (*Hint:* Unless you are talking to AP students, and even then, don’t use the term “authorial voice” with teens.) Just as you start your booktalk with a hook, you should end with something memorable, perhaps the title. Whatever you do: ***Don’t give away the ending!*** You want teens to read the book; if you tell them the ending they don’t have to read it.

In considering the style of booktalk you wish to present, consider the strength of the title. Is it plot? Characters? Tone? A talk that

focuses on the plot may be the easiest to prepare for, but it is important to remember to keep the talk short and sweet. When writing a booktalk that centers on the plot, do not give too much away: introduce the basics and the conflict but do not indicate any resolution. Or perhaps you wish to focus on the characters. This is particularly effective if you are comfortable performing; you can take on the first person voice of a character. Be careful to make it clear how you are presenting or you risk confusing your audience. You can write a talk that sets a mood, the most common method for scary or humorous titles. This is the style of performance that lends itself well to reading sections of the book. Perhaps there is one section that stands out that you want to share. This technique works well with informational titles and poetry collections.

Once you decide on the titles and content of your presentation, decide the type of

Rules of Booktalking

- ✓ Read the book.
- ✓ **Don’t** give away the ending
- ✓ Like the book
- ✓ Be Yourself!!
- ✓ Be sure to identify title and author
- ✓ Don’t review the book, oversell, gush etc.
- ✓ Practice, practice, practice
- ✓ Know your audience
- ✓ Bring variety
- ✓ Keep records: what you used, what worked, etc.
- ✓ Write it down the first time
- ✓ Engage your audience
- ✓ Prepare a “hook”
- ✓ Learn from mistakes, celebrate success

Perhaps this goes without saying but it is so important: Like teens!

performance you are comfortable with. Some booktalkers use props or costumes. While props and costumes add to the entertainment of the presentation, be careful that they are not distracting from the book and be sure you are comfortable using them. Some booktalkers use technology to enhance their presentation, using overheads of the book jackets or Power Point presentations. Once again, the technology should add value to the performance, not be distracting. And be prepared for the technology to fail or not be available. Consider different forms of media to enhance your talk. Is there music, movies or magazines you can bring in to support the performance and help make connections to the books? And don't forget – giveaways can always help with audience engagement.

On the day of your booktalk, there are some things to keep in mind. Bring multiple copies of titles you are booktalking, if at all possible. Arrange for the books to be checked out immediately, so if they are requested, you are prepared. Bring lists of the titles for the teens in case they want something later or cannot get the title they want (someone else may get to it first). Bring water. And finally, give yourself a break and remember it may not be perfect. Have a sense of humor. Be yourself. *This should be fun!*

After you present, take notes. Keep good records of what titles you talked about. This will keep you from using the same titles over and over. Make notes about what worked and what didn't. While it is fresh in your mind, revise your booktalk to be more successful. Ask for feedback from others who may have different insight and can help you evaluate your presentation. Notice which titles students seem to be enjoying or sharing with one another. Librarians and teachers can work well as a collaborative unit. Keep in touch with one another, ask for feedback, and share the booktalking responsibilities. Can teachers booktalk from their classrooms or from the library to their students? Of course! Use the ideas above and develop techniques on your own to help each child become an avid and capable reader.

Think Web 2.0

How about sharing your booktalks on Web 2.0 media so that teens can tune in anytime they want to listen? And, if you can booktalk, then why can't teens learn to share the books they like in the same manner on YouTube, podcasts, school or public websites, Flickr, Voki, and a host of other video and audio sharing systems. It is a whole new world, particularly with the current trend on digital storytelling for children, teens, and adults.

And remember that publishers are joining the booktalking world, so just look up your favorite title on their websites or on YouTube. For example look at Scholastic's collection of video and audio booktalks at <http://www.scholastic.com/librarians/ab/booktalks.htm>

Further Resources for Booktalking

- Bodart, Joni Richards. *Booktalking the Award Winners* series. H. W. Wilson
- Frazel, Michael. *Digital Storytelling for Educators*. ISTE, 2010.
- Jarrell, Jill S. *Cooler Than Fiction: a Planning Guide for Teen Nonfiction Booktalks*. MacFarland, 2010.
- Mahood, Kristine. *Booktalking with Teens*. Libraries Unlimited, 2010
- Miller, Handler. *Digital Storytelling*. 2nd ed. Focal Press, 2008.
- "The Power of Booktalking" DVD. Neal Schuman, 2009.
- Schall, Lucy. *Value-Packed Book Talks*. Libraries Unlimited, 2011.
- York, Sherry. *Booktalking Authentic Multicultural Literature*. Linworth, 2009.
- Young Adult Library Services Association. *Professional Development Center: Booktalking*: www.ala.org/ala/mgrps/divs/yalsa/profdev/booktalking.cfm

60. Programming for Young Adults

Mark Twain once said, “The person who *does not* read good books has no advantage over the person who *cannot* read them.” If we wish to encourage young adults to join our literacy community, we must build a component for sharing the joy of reading with readers. The following ideas are suggestions that have been successful in middle and high schools. Take the ideas that you think might work in your classroom, library or school and begin to surround the young adults in your school with a literacy environment. One of the most important things to remember is to build programs around what teens are interested in. Programs like gaming, sleepovers, and creating multimedia projects are all 21st century programming that are currently popular. Keep up with what’s new by collaborating with your peers or visiting young adult and children’s listservs for ideas.

1. Create a teen advisory board or “volunteer” group to help establish programs and activities that will include their peers in library or classroom literacy activities. Display the photograph of the advisory board and hold regular meetings with an agenda (all teens invited to attend) to set a mission statement, establish a year-long theme or program, and implement the program.
2. Publish a newsletter/blog promoting good books to read.
3. Have teens write book reviews/do booktalks of new books and publish them on your own library blog/newsletter, on Amazon.com or any other Web 2.0 location.
4. Offer promotional giveaways or “weekly specials,” just like the department stores. “This Week’s Special—Check out a book and receive a ‘Library Lollipop.’”
5. Create a display of books written by teens and include author bios.
6. Create a display of poems and stories written by local teens. Provide information about procedures and places where any teen might get their work published.
7. Identify a monthly reading/literacy theme and create a space where young readers are encouraged to submit artwork that supports the theme. Display the artwork in the library as part of the monthly theme.
8. Establish a book or author award from your school. Develop criteria for nominations, procedure for voting for the nominated books, award and honor specifications, and other details. Conduct the award discussions, send the author or publisher notice, and present the award. Send notices to local newspapers and national periodicals.
9. Distribute coupons for amnesty from fines owed.
10. Set up and promote a paperback book exchange.
11. Schedule a read-in during a specific period during the week. For example, hold a “Brown Bag Read-In” over the lunch period. Encourage students to bring their “brown bag” lunches to the library during their lunch period and read. Or provide passes to those students who want to eat lunch in the cafeteria but to then come to the library to read during the rest of the period.
12. Have listening lunches where teens bring their lunch to the library and listen to performances by their peers: poetry readings, drama, music, etc.
13. Create “Read With Me” posters for distribution to elementary schools showing high school sports players, cheerleaders, drama members, or just plain students reading a favorite book from their childhood.
14. Have writing classes write a children’s book for a specific child in a partner elementary school. Deliver and read the book during a specific day.
15. Individual students or groups of students such as the basketball team might visit elementary schools to read with students.

16. Make a booktalk video tape of great teen reads (or create a PowerPoint presentation). Share the presentation in classrooms throughout the high school; supply a copy to the hospitals for their teen wards. (Perhaps sponsor a coin drive to buy paperback copies of the books that go with the video tape.)
17. Engage in a drive to get all high school students to obtain a public library card.
18. Designate one afternoon a month to be a cafe and reading venue. Teens are invited to read their own work or a favorite poem, chapter, and so forth, by recognized writers. Serve beverages, provide theater-style seating for the audience, and provide a microphone for the presenter.
19. Schedule "Friday Forums" —a time for special events in the library: art shows, reader's theater, Q&A sessions with the administration, politicians, or other people of interest, featured speakers and so forth.
20. Booktalk books regularly in the classroom, in the library, during lunch times in the cafeteria, anywhere there are potential readers.
21. Form a special interest storytelling club. Schedule performances for the storytellers in classrooms, elementary schools, civic organizations and clubs, or any special event.
22. Plan movie-book activities. Read the book; see the movie; talk. Is there anything more fun and engaging for teens? Everyone will have an opinion and will have a great time.

□

Publishing Sources for Young Writers

- *About Teens: Humor, Fun, Fiction and More*: www.aboutteens.org
- *The Concord Review*: www.tcr.org
- *Crunch: An Online*: nces.ed.gov/nceskids/
- *Cyberteens Online Magazines*: www.cyberteens.com
- *KidPub Children's Publishing*: www.kidpub.org
- *Kids Authors*: www.kidauthors.com (poems; in two age categories: 6–12; 13–18)
- *Kids Bookshelf*: www.kidsbookshelf.com (for writers 17 years of age and under)
- *Merlyn's Pen—Fiction, Essays and Poems by Americas Teens*: www.merlynspen.org
- *Midlink Magazine*: longwood.cs.ucf.edu/~MidLink/
- *Skipping Stones*: www.skippingstones.org
- *Stone Soup Magazine*: www.stonesoup.com
- *Teen Ink*: teenink.com
- *The Writing Conference, Inc.: The Writers' Slate*: www.writingconference.com

Keeping Up—Getting New Ideas for Teen Programming

One of the greatest resources for ideas for your library or classroom is your professional peers. Whether you are in the classroom or library, identify a group of like-minded peers and form an informal professional support group. Plan a regular time to get together to share ideas and brainstorm solutions to situations that present themselves. Ideas from professional colleagues can also come from professional journals and listservs that promote interaction among professionals.

Books

- Nelson, J. and Keith Braafladt. *Technology and Literacy: 21st Century Library Programming for Children and Teens*. ALA, 2011
- Colston, V. *Teens Go Green!: Tips, Techniques, Tools, and Themes for YA Programming*. Libraries Unlimited, 2011.
- Ott, V. *Teen Programs with Punch: A Month-by-Month Guide*. Libraries Unlimited, 2006.

Professional Journals

- *School Library Journal*: <http://www.schoollibraryjournal.com/>
- *Teacher Librarian*: <http://www.teacherlibrarian.com/>
- *Library Media Connection*: <http://www.librarymediaconnection.com/lmc/>
- *School Library Activities Monthly*: <http://www.schoollibrarymonthly.com/>

Professional Organizations

- International Reading Association: <http://www.reading.org>
- National Council of Teachers of English: <http://www.ncte.org>
- American Library Association: <http://www.ala.org>
- See if there is a local group in your area. For instance in northern CA there is an organization called BAYA (Bay Area Young Adult Librarians). See baya.org

Listsers: Three that are recommended highly are:

- Child Lit: https://email.rutgers.edu/mailman/listinfo/child_lit
- YALSA Book: <http://lists.ala.org/www/subscribe/yalsa-bk>
- PUBYAC: <https://mail.prairienet.org/mailman/listinfo/pubyac>

If you wish to search for more listservs (professional online community) go to the “Official catalog of Listserv® lists” at <http://www.lsoft.com/catalist.html>

Book Blogs—Sharing Books Online

Promote your library and reading with a library or classroom book blog—a quick and easy-to-use website where you can quickly post thoughts, interact with people, and more. Anyone can create a free blog courtesy of Blogger Buzz at www.blogger.com. See an example at www.mcbookwords.blogspot.com

Index

- Adult books, 123–25
Adventure books, 85–87
Alternative music, 48–49
Anderson, Laurie Halse, 13
Anime, 28–29
Art, 110–11
Audio books, 78–79
Awards, 10–13
- Beloved*, 115
Biography, 90–92
Booktalking, 138–40
Boys in teen literature, 68–69
Bradbury, Ray, 96
Breslin, Abigail, 53
- Canon, 112–15
Celebrities, 52–53
Censorship, 135–37
Children’s authors, 5
Children’s literature, 4–5
Christian Romance, 74–75
Clare, Cassandra, 71
Classics, 130
Coldplay, 49
Collection development, 17–19
College-bound reading, 116–17
Comic books, 26–27
Coming-of-age, 58–60
Crutcher, Chris, 137
Cult movies, 30–31
Cultural literacy, 118–19
- Dance, 106–7
Disabilities, 78–79
Downloading music, 42–43
Drama, 104–5
- Emerging canon, 114–15
Eminem, 47
Englund, Robert, 31
- Fantasy, 97–98
Fleming, Candace, 91
- Formats of literature, 78–79
Free Spirit Press, 81
- Girls in teen literature, 66–67
GLBTQ literature, 76–77
Graphic novels, 24–25
Green, John, 63
- Hinton, S.E., 9
Hip-hop music, 46–47
Historical fiction, 88–89
History, 88–89
Hollywood, 102–3
Horror books, 99–101
Horror movies, 36–37
- Intellectual freedom, 135–37
Internet, 34–35
iPod, 43
Issues in teen literature, 61–63
- Janeczko, Paul, 122
Jones, Bill T., 107
- Lady Gaga, 41
Legion of Super-Heroes, 27
Literature in the classroom, 129–30
Local history photography, 89
Louvre museum, 111
- Ma, Yo Yo, 109
Magazines, 50–51
Malian’s Song, 128
Manga, 24–25
McCormick, Carolyn, 79
McKinley, Robin, 98
Mean Girls, 73
Media and teens, 54–55
Miller, Arthur, 105
Morrison, Toni, 115
Movie book tie-ins, 72–73
Movies, 36–37, 38–39, 102–103
Multicultural literature, 132–34
Music, 40–49, 108–9

Music, classical, 108–9
Mystery books, 99–101

Nature books, 85–87

Oscars, 103

Peters, Julie Ann, 77
Picture books, 126–28
Poetry, 120–22
Pop music, 40–41
Programming, 141–43
Psychology, teen, 14–16
Public and school library cooperation,
20–22

Quick Picks, 64–65

Rap music, 46–47
Reading promotion, 56–57
Realistic fiction, 58–60, 61–63
Ritter, John H., 84
Romance, 74–75

School and public library cooperation,
20–22
Science, 93–94
Science fiction, 95–96
Scott, Ridley, 37
Selection criteria, 17–19
Self-help books, 80–81
Series books, 70–71
Social networking, 34–35
Sports, 82–84
State awards, 12, 57
Survey research, 3

Technology, 93–94
Teen movies, 38–39
Teen movies, franchises, 39
Teen psychology, 14–16
Teens and media, 54–55
Television, 44–45
Theater, 104–5
Thin books, 64–65

Van Dijk, Sheri, 16

Video games, 32–33

Web 2.0, 35
Werlin, Nancy, 101
Western canon, 112–13
Westerns, 85–87
World of WarCraft, 33

YA literature–history, 6–9
YA novels, 7, 8
Yang, Gene Luen, 25

About the Authors

Sharron L. McElmeel is a veteran classroom teacher and library media specialist. She is a graduate of the University of Iowa's School of Library Science and spent decades in the Cedar Rapids (Iowa) public schools. She has built a national reputation as a resource for those interested in children's and young adult literature. She has written more than two dozen books in the area of children's and young adult literature and writes and edits for a number of educational publications. She has been named as Iowa Reading Teacher of the Year by the Iowa Reading Association, honored with the organization's Celebrate Literacy Award, nominated as Iowa's Teacher of the Year, and, in 2004, she was named one of the Top Ten Online Educators of the Year. She is an often-requested speaker at conferences and professional development workshops. Currently, in addition to her writing, she is director of McBookwords, a literacy organization and teaches courses in children's and young adult literature at the University of Wisconsin—Stout.

Beth Wrenn-Estes has been a school and a public librarian. She was the Manager of Technical Services, Collection Development and Acquisitions for Denver Public Schools in Colorado. Beth was a youth services librarian at Lone Tree Public Library which is a part of Douglas County Libraries in Colorado and was responsible for both programming and services. Wrenn-Estes has been teaching for San Jose State University School of Library and Information Services since 2007. She teaches Young Adult Materials, Children's Programming and Services, Intellectual Freedom and Youth, Storytelling and History of the Book. She is passionate about libraries and especially serving youth.

David V. Loertscher began his professional career as a high school librarian in Idaho Falls, Idaho. After his Ph.D. at Indiana University he began teaching, along with other courses, Materials for Young Adults, which he has been teaching for the past 30+ years. Throughout those years he stayed connected to teenagers in Scouting and other youth activities. The bulk of his publishing has centered on the School Library Media Program, and this book is his first entry into a topic that he has loved for many years. He is currently a Professor of Library and Information Science at San José State University in California.